IELTS Speaking

September – December 2020



t.me/IELTSc1

Published by IELTSMaterial.com

This publication is in copyright. All rights are reserved, including resale rights. This e-book is sold subject to the condition that no part of this e-book may also be copied, duplicated, stored, distributed, reproduced or transmitted for any purpose in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, or by any information storage and retrieval system without written permission from the author.

Preface

As far as you know, IELTS candidates will have only 11-14 minutes for IELTS Speaking and it comprises of Part 1, Part 2 and Part 3. Therefore, it is absolutely necessary that you invest time in practicing the real IELTS Speaking questions.

Beside Cambridge IELTS Practice Tests series published by Oxford University Press, IELTS Speaking Recent Actual Tests with Suggested Answers aims to develop speaking and test-taking skills along with language proficiency to help you achieve a high IELTS Speaking score. It contains IELTS Speaking questions that were asked and would be asked in IELTS Speaking tests in 2020. The questions are divided into part 1, part 2 and part 3. Each of the questions have answers provided by our certified IELTS trainer along with the vocabulary that is specifically used for that question/topic. When using this e-book, you can be aware of the kinds of questions that you would face in a real exam, and how the answers are framed accordingly. Moreover, these tests are extracted from an authentic IELTS bank source; therefore, you are in all probability to encounter these questions in your real examinations.

The authors are convinced that you will find IELTS Speaking Recent Actual Tests with Suggested Answers extremely helpful on your path to success with the International English Language Testing System.

Don't just trust to luck in your IELTS exam – the key is practice!

IELTS Material

https://ieltsmaterial.com | admin@ieltsmaterial.com



Introduction

The Speaking test comprises of 3 parts and is conducted by an examiner for 11-14 minutes. This test is similar to an interview and thus the emotions attached to the test is also similar – jitters, scary, anxiety. This is where IELTS Speaking e-book comes in.

This e-book helps you to know the unfamiliar.

Part – 1

Most of the part one questions are personal questions that the examiner will ask you to bring you into a comfort zone. These questions are sorted in terms of different topics.

Part – 2 & 3

Part – 2 consists of a cue card for which you will be given 1 minute to prepare and 2 minutes to talk. The questions in the cue card are addressed and a sample answer is given for the cue-card. Following the cue-card are part 3 questions. Part 3 of the speaking e-book consists of questions related to the cue card you will receive. And so, these questions are found with sample answers below the related cue-cards.

Vocabulary

Lexical resources is a factor of assessment during the speaking tests. So, below each of these topics, you will find a vocabulary section that contains words related to that particular topic along with examples.

Happy practicing!



Table of Contents

Part 1 9
1. PLANTS 9
2. THE COUNTRYSIDE 10
3. PHOTOS 11
4. PUBLIC TRANSPORT 12
5. STAYING UP LATE 13
6. CELEBRITIES AND STARS 13
7. WATER 14
8. COOKING AND BAKING 15
9. COLOURS 16
10. TIDINESS 17
11. MOVIES 17
12. PLANS 18
13. RUNNING 19
14. PARKS 20
15. NEIGHBOURHOOD / LOCAL AREA 21
16. WALKING 22
17. LANGUAGES 22
18. PUBLIC HOLIDAYS 23
19. MUSIC 24
20. AGE 25
21. TRAVEL 26
22. BREAKS 27
23.PENS AND PENCILS 28
24. SPENDING TIME BY YOURSELF 29
25. WILD ANIMALS 30
26. LAUGHTER 30
27. CAKES AND DESSERTS 31
28. CONCENTRATION 32
29. BEAUTIFUL SCENERY 33
30. HISTORY 34
31. COFFEE OR TEA 35
32. SLEEP 35
33. FRIENDS 36
34. HOME/ ACCOMMODATION 37

35. STUDY 40
36. WORK 42
37. HOMETOWN 44
38. JEANS 45
39. CONCENTRATION 47
40. VOICE 48
41. WALKING 50
42. MOVIES 51
43. LANGUAGES 53
44. FRIENDS 54
45. RUBBISH 56
46. PERFUME 57
47. SOCIAL NETWORK 58
48. MATH 60
49. TRAVELLING 61
50. BORROWING/LENDING 63
51. READING 64
52. SMILE 65
53. PLAN 67
54. VISIT RELATIVES 68
55. STREET MARKET 70
56. OUTDOOR ACTIVITIES 70
57. WEATHER 72
58. PATIENCE 73
59. ANIMAL 74
60. TEA OR COFFEE 76
61. SLEEP 77
62. SKY 79
63. SHARING 81
64. HANDWRITING 82
65. PHOTOS/PICTURES 82
66. MUSIC 83
67. TEACHER 85
68. TRANSPORTATION 87
69. THE AREA YOU LIVE IN 89
70. HOLIDAY 89

71. NUMBERS 90
72. PEN OR PENCIL 91
73. SWEETS 92
74. SCENERY 94
75. MUSEUMS 95
76. ART 96
77. CAKE 97
78. LAUGH 99
79. WATER SPORTS 100
80. RUNNING 101
81. SCIENCE 102
82. OPINIONS/IDEAS 102
83. ALONE 103
PART 2 & 3 104
1. Describe a programme or an app that you think is useful 104
2. Describe a recent goal you set yourself 106
3. Describe a large company that you are interested in 108
4. Describe an article you read about healthy living 110
5. Describe an interesting animal you have seen 111
6. Describe a (school or company) uniform you have worn. 113
7. Describe an important text message you received 115
8. Describe a successful small company 117
9. Describe an ideal house or apartment you would like to live in 119
10. Describe a job you would not like to do in the future 121
11. Describe a practical skill you learned 123
12. Describe a road trip you went on 125
13. Describe a city you have visited and want to go back to in the future 127
14. Describe a place you visited that has been affected by pollution. 129
15. Describe a crowded place you have been to. 130
16. Describe a school you went to in your childhood 132
17. Describe a place where you read and write(not your home). 134
18. Describe an interesting place you remember well that was full of colours. 136
19. Describe a historical building you have visited 138
20. Describe a friend who is a good leader 140
21. Describe the person you spend the most time with 142
22. Describe a person who taught you something important 144

23. Describe a person who is good at his or her job 146
24.Describe a performance you watched recently 148
25 .Describe something you bought but difficult to use at first 151
26.Describe a difficult challenge you met 153
27.Describe an interesting animal you have ever seen 156
28. Describe a family member who you spend the most time with 159
29. Describe a crowded place you have been to 162
30. Describe a time when someone apologized to you 164
31. Describe an important journey that has been delayed 167
32. Describe a change that can improve your local area 170
33. Describe an occasion when weather prevented your activity 173
34. Describe a time you couldn't use the mobile phone 175
35. Describe an ideal house or apartment you would like to live in the future 178
36. Describe a successful small company that you know 180
37. Describe a place you remember well that full of colour 182
38. Describe a time you do not tell your friend the truth 184
39. Describe a leisure activity you do with your family 186
40. Describe a time you were sleepy but had to stay awake 189
41. Describe clothes you wear on special occasions 191

Part 1

1. PLANTS

- Do you know anything about growing plants?
- Do you keep plants at home?
- Did you grow any plants when you were young?

1. Do you know anything about growing plants?

Well, people call me green-fingered. My granny maintained a big garden in her backyard, and I had a whale of time there during my holidays. I learnt the art of gardening from her. From planting seedlings, watering, and nurturing them with organic manure to pruning them, I learnt a great deal from her, and I'm on my own now. I have a big garden, and sometimes I help my friends to make one too.

2. Do you keep plants at home?

Yes, I've got some indoors and outdoors. One interesting plant I grow indoors is the Desert cacti. Though many abhor it, I decided to try my hands on. It required some research and little effort. I grew it in a pot and watered it whenever the soil began to dry. It did pay me off by blooming after three years. It was such a pleasure!

3. Did you grow any plants when you were young?

Yes. I helped my mum raise a bougainvillea. I enjoyed watering it, and we celebrated when it was in full bloom.

VOCABULARY:

Green fingered (adj) - Having a seemingly natural gardening ability
Eg: Your Ixora is doing good. You must be green fingered.

Whale of time (noun phrase) - A very enjoyable experience
Eg: We had a whale of time in Mauritius.

Pruning (verb) - trim (a tree, shrub, or bush) by cutting away dead or overgrown branches or stems, especially to encourage growth.
Eg: It is time to prune the roses.

Abhor (verb) - regard with disgust and hatred
Eg: He abhorred killing of animals.

2. THE COUNTRYSIDE

- What do you usually do in the countryside?
- Have you ever lived in the countryside?
- Would you enjoy living in the countryside?
- Will you live in the countryside in the future?

1. What do you usually do in the countryside?

I often go to Shimoga, which is a 6-hour drive from Bangalore, where I live. Well, I have got plenty of things to do there. I go to the Jog falls, which is such stunning scenery. I take long walks, breathe in the fresh air, and enjoy the tranquility.

2. Have you ever lived in the countryside?

I have not lived in one, but I did spend a good deal of time in Tanjore, where my aunt lived. We used to visit her during summer vacations. She owned some acres of growing rice fields, and we enjoyed getting drenched in the water pump on the farm. I miss those days!

3. Would you enjoy living in the countryside?

I work for an IT company, and many companies have plans to move to the countryside to escape the traffic. That way, I might get a chance to live in the countryside. I would thoroughly enjoy it.

4. Will you live in the countryside in the future?

I would, when I retire. I think it is the right time. So, I might end up spending my old age in the countryside. I would be able to enjoy the lovely, friendly, and beautiful countryside to the fullest.

VOCABULARY

Tranquility (noun) - the quality or state of being tranquil; calm.
Eg: I enjoy the tranquility of rural areas.

Drenched (verb) - wet thoroughly; soak
Eg: Since it rained in the park, I got drenched.

Acres (noun) - a unit of land area equal to 4,840 square yards (0.405 hectare).
Eg: He owns some acres of land, in the northern part of the village

Retirement (noun) - the action or fact of leaving one's job and ceasing to work.
Eg: The retirement age in India is 58.

3. PHOTOS

- Do you like to take photos?
- In which situation do you take photos?
- How do you store your photos?
- Do you prefer to take photos of yourself or have other people take photos?

1. Do you like to take photos?

Yes, I love it. I started by taking photos on my mobile camera at weddings and parties. Slowly, I became interested in nature. I started taking snaps of birds and flowers. Then I bought a digital cam. Photography is my hobby now!

2. In which situation do you take photos?

I carry my camera with me wherever I go. You never know when a special moment occurs. It could just be rain in the hillside, the laughter of your kid, a monkey jumping with its newborn, a roaring lion in the wild. It could be any small moment of awe that you would want to treasure for the future.

3. How do you store your photos?

I store them in the cloud, and it could be anything from a dropbox, google photos, or google drive. I don't save them on the phone because I run out of space. When I find something interesting, I don't hesitate to make an album out of them.

4.Do you like posing for pictures?

I love selfies! But I also like to pose for photos. But I don't restrict myself to weddings and parties. It could be anything from a picnic with friends, trekking in the wild, or simply loving moments with my family.

VOCABULARY

snap (noun) - An informal photograph that is not very skillful or artistic
Eg: I took some snaps of a monkey in the zoo.

Camera (noun) - a device for recording visual images in the form of photographs, film, or video signals
Eg: The little girl did not like to face the camera.

Awe (noun) - a feeling of reverential respect mixed with fear or wonder.
Eg: She gazed in awe at the golden bangles.

Selfies (noun) - a photograph that one has taken of oneself, typically one taken with a smartphone or webcam and shared via social media.
Eg : She posted her selfie on Facebook.



4. PUBLIC TRANSPORT

- Do you travel by public transport?
- When was the last time you travelled by public transport?
- What you don't like about public transport?
- Would you prefer to use public transport in the future?

1. Do you travel by public transport?

Yes, I do. Every morning I take a bus to my office. There are air-conditioned and non-air conditioned buses plying in the city. I prefer to take the air-conditioned bus, though it is costlier.

2. When was the last time you travelled by public transport?

It was last Friday when I had to go to the office. Like I said before, I took the air-conditioned bus, and the ride was comfortable.

3. What don't you like about public transport?

The AC buses are less frequent. If you miss one, you have to wait nearly 10 minutes for the next one to arrive. In the evenings, when you are worn out and want to go home soon, it tests your temper.

4. Would you prefer to use public transport in the future?

No. I want to use my vehicle. Considering the traffic in the city, I would prefer a two-wheeler rather than a four-wheeler.

VOCABULARY

Ply (verb) - travel regularly over a route, typically for commercial purposes.
Eg: These buses ply across the bridge.

Ride (noun) - a journey made on a horse, bicycle, or motorcycle, or in a vehicle.
Eg: Her uncle took her for a ride on the bike.

Worn out (adj) - extremely tired; exhausted.
Eg: She looked worn out.

temper (noun) - tendency to become angry very quickly.
Eg: She has a real temper.

5. STAYING UP LATE

- Do you sometimes go to bed late?
- What do you do when you stay up late?
- How do you feel when you have stayed up late the night before?

1. **Do you sometimes go to bed late?**

Well, it depends on whether I have met my deadlines at work. If not, I stay late to finish it and go to bed around 1:00 PM or 2:00 PM.

2. **What do you do when you stay up late?**

I would do many things. I would finish pending office work, read a book that I find irresistible, or talk to a friend over the phone.

3. How do you feel when you have stayed up late the night before?

It doesn't feel nice to sleep late and wake up early. I get a headache, the next morning and it spoils my whole day.

VOCABULARY

Meet a deadline (noun phrase) - to finish work on time, by the agreed date.
Eg: We are hoping to meet the July deadline

Irresistible(adj) - too attractive and tempting to be resisted.
Eg: The chocolates were irresistible.

Over the phone (noun phrase) - hat something is done using the phone as a way to do it.
Eg: She conveyed the news over the phone

Spoil (verb) - diminish or destroy the value or quality of.
Eg: Don't spoil the fun.

6. CELEBRITIES AND STARS

- Have you ever met a celebrity in real life?
- Who is your favourite movie star?
- Are international superstars popular in your country?

1. **Have you ever met a celebrity in real life?**

Yes. I have seen Amitabh Bachan in the airport. But I didn't make any effort to get an autograph from him. Sometimes I happen to sit next to film stars when I travel by air when they take the economy class. But I have not volunteered to talk to them.

2. **Who is your favourite movie star?**

Well, I'm a fan of Aishwarya Rai. She is a versatile actress, and I admired her from the very first movie. She is worth the Miss Universe title. My admiration increased after I watched her performance in the movie 'Taal'.



3. Are international superstars popular in your country?

Yes, they are. The youth of our country adore them. International superstars like Chris Hemsworth, Chris Evan, Robert Downey Jr, Gal Gadot are extremely popular in our country. From the music world the superstars Taylor Swift, Alan Walker, Selena Gomes, Ed Sheeran, Justin Bieber, and many more have their tracks on trending.

VOCABULARY

Autograph (noun) - a signature, especially that of a celebrity written as a memento for an admirer.
Eg: The actor was surrounded by fans asking for an autograph

Versatile (adj) - able to adapt or be adapted to many different functions or activities.
Eg: Sarah was a versatile poetess of her times.

Adore (verb) - love and respect (someone) deeply.
Eg: Children adore their mothers.

Superstar (noun) - an extremely famous and successful performer or sports player.
Eg: She became a superstar without much effort.

7. WATER

- Do you ever drink bottled water? Why?
- What kind of water do you like to drink?
- How often do you drink water?
- Do you think water is an important resource?

1. Do you ever drink bottled water? Why?
Yes, I do. I prefer bottled water when going on a long drive to new places because there is no guarantee for the purity of water in the new place. So bottled water is the convenient and best source of water at such times.

2. What kind of water do you like to drink?
I am happy with the water that I get out of my aqua water purifier. I believe it is pure and has all the essential minerals to keep me healthy.

3. How often do you drink water?
I drink a glass of water every hour. That makes 12-15 glasses of water per day. It helps me to keep myself hydrated and stay fit.

4. Do you think water is a vital resource?
Yes, of course. Water is an elixir of life. Since ancient times, civilizations were created near sources of water. It plays a vital role in sustaining life on earth.

VOCABULARY

Guarantee (noun) - a formal assurance (typically in writing) that certain conditions will be fulfilled, especially that a product will be repaired or replaced if not of a specified quality.



Eg: The shop offered a guarantee against rusting

Hydrated (verb) - cause to absorb water.
Eg: The skin doctor prescribed a moisturizer that would keep the skin hydrated

Fit (adj) - in good health, especially because of regular physical exercise.
Eg: You must learn to keep yourself fit

Sustaining (verb) - strengthen or support physically or mentally.
Eg: You must use protein drinks to sustain your energy.

8. COOKING AND BAKING

- Do you like to cook?
- Have you ever baked a cake?
- Would you like to learn how to bake ?
- What kinds of things are baked in your country?

1. Do you like to cook?

I love cooking. I like to prepare interesting delicacies and share it with friends and relatives. My day begins with the aroma of the spices. I feel heavenly when chopping the sweet-smelling coriander and on hearing the mustard seeds splutter. After a hard day's work, cooking rejuvenates my mind.

2. Have you ever baked a cake?

Yes. I have tried it on a stove, though. All you have to do is preheat a vessel. In the meanwhile, you can prepare the batter. You can either use powdered chocolate biscuits or cocoa. Grease a tray with butter, pour the batter onto it and place it in the preheated vessel for about 45 minutes to 1 hour and your cake will be ready.

3. Would you like to learn how to bake?

Yes. Though I know how to make a cake and have watched a lot of YouTube videos, I would be interested in learning it in person from a Chef.

4. What kinds of things are baked in your country?

Well, a lot of things are baked in our country from cakes to cookies and bread to pies. Plum cakes are my favourite. They are made of either dried fruits like grapes, currants, raisins or prunes, orange peels or with fresh fruits.

VOCABULARY

Delicacies (noun) - something delightful or pleasing, especially a choice food considered with regard to its rarity, costliness, or the like
Eg: Chocolate lava cake is a true delicacy

Batter (noun) - mixture of flour and liquid with other ingredients

Eg: She got the dosa batter from store

Chef (noun) - a professional cook, typically the chief cook in a restaurant or hotel.
Eg: She worked as a Chef in a five-star hotel

Prunes (noun) - a plum preserved by drying and having a black, wrinkled appearance.
Eg: Prunes are high in fiber and are very good for health.

9. COLOURS

- What's your favourite colour?
- Do you usually wear clothes in your favourite colours?
- Are there any colours you dislike?
- Do you like dark colours or light colours?

1. What's your favourite colour?

My choice varies based on purpose. If I'm to choose clothes, I would prefer all shades of green. If it is for house decor, I will choose shades of pink as it radiates a warm and cosy feeling into the minds.

2. Do you usually wear clothes in your favourite colours?

Yes. My mum says my wardrobe looks green. I have all shades of green from lime, olive, emerald to sea green and parrot green.

3. Are there any colours you dislike?

No. It is not that I dislike, but I avoid colours like black when it comes to painting my house. It makes sense when the painter says you have to choose colours that reflect light.

4. Do you like dark colours or light colours?

I choose based on my mood. When I'm happy, I pick out bright, vibrant colours. When I'm sad, I go for dull shades.

VOCABULARY

Radiates (verb) - emit (energy, especially light or heat) in the form of rays or waves.
Eg: The sun radiates energy

Cozy (verb) - make (someone) feel comfortable or complacent.
Eg: She felt cozy curled up on the velvet sofa

Wardrobe (noun) - a large, tall cupboard or recess in which clothes may be hung or stored.
Eg: Her wardrobe is very expensive

Olive (adj) - greyish green
Eg: She wore a olive gown for the party

10. TIDINESS

- Are you a tidy person?
- Do you think people should be tidy all the time?
- Are you tidier at work or at home?

1. Are you a tidy person?

Yes, I'm. I like to keep myself and my surroundings very clean. I love tidying my house, and you can even call it my hobby.

2. Do you think people should be tidy all the time?

Yes. I'm very hygiene conscious. I think everyone should follow simple things like washing hands after they use the restroom, covering their face with a handkerchief when they sneeze, or cough.

3. Are you tidier at work or home?

I would say both. At work, I don't mess up my office cabin with dolls and other unwanted stuff. At home, I'm more organized. Everything has its place at my home.

VOCABULARY

Surroundings (noun) - the things and conditions around a person or thing.
Eg: She hated her surroundings.

Tidy (verb) - bring order to; arrange neatly.
Eg: The maid tidied the house

Hobby (noun) - an activity done regularly in one's leisure time for pleasure.
Eg: Reading was her hobby

Hygiene (noun) - conditions or practices conducive to maintaining health and preventing disease, especially through cleanliness.
Eg: Personal hygiene is very important

11. MOVIES

- What's your favourite movie?
- Do your friends like this movie?
- What kind of movies do young people like?
- Would you like to be a movie star?

1. What's your favourite movie?
I love the movie Interstellar. It is a science fiction film. It describes a group of astronauts who are in search of a new home for humanity.

2. Do your friends like this movie?
Yes. They like it too. It was one of my friends who recommended this movie to me. Some of them were so amused that they began telling me that we better get prepared to live on planets like Mars.

3. What kind of movies do young people like?
In my opinion, young people are fond of superhuman characters like spiderman. Also, they like fantasies like Harry Potter.

4. Would you like to be a movie star?
No, not at all. I hate to sacrifice my privacy. I hate to be surrounded by paparazzi all the time.

VOCABULARY

Fiction (noun) - literature in the form of prose, especially novels, that describes imaginary events and people.
Eg: Things which were once created in fiction are becoming a reality

Astronaut (noun) - a person who is trained to travel in a spacecraft.
Eg: A group of astronauts travelled to Mercury, last week.

Amused (adj) - finding something funny or entertaining.
Eg: Children were so amused by the magician.

Paparazzis (noun) - a freelance photographer who pursues celebrities to get photographs of them.
Eg: She drove the car fast, to escape from the paparazzis.

12. PLANS

- What is the hardest part about making plans?
- What is the most recent plan you made?
- Do you make plans every day?
- Are you good at managing your time?

1. What is the hardest part of making plans?

It'sIt's about prioritizing. It isn't easy to decide the order in which you have to take up the tasks. I often keep wondering whether I should do yoga first or prepare breakfast.

2. What is the most recent plan you made?

I made a travel plan to Bylaguppe, which is on the way to Madikeri. We were a group of four. We planned to travel in my car, and I made the hotel arrangements too. Since it is a Tibetan settlement, we were on the lookout for authentic Indian food. I was successful in booking a lodging near an Indian restaurant. It was a walkable distance to the restaurant, and my friends appreciated me for it.

3. Do you make plans every day?

Well, it's not that I make a plan, but things seem to work out in order. I would say I got used to the routine. I rarely do anything out of the ordinary, so you can call me well-planned too.

4. Are you good at managing your time?



I don't make any effort towards it. I follow my routine, and if anything is a priority, be it at work or home, I do that first. Time gets managed automatically.

VOCABULARY

Priority (noun) - the fact or condition of being regarded or treated as more important than others.
Eg: She was given work to be done on priority.

Well-planned (adj) - carefully arranged or designed.
Eg: The wedding was well planned.

Automatic (adj) - (with reference to a device or process) by itself with little or no direct human control.
Eg: The vehicle had an automatic gear.

Routine (noun) - a sequence of actions regularly followed.
Eg: She always stuck to the routine

13. RUNNING

- Do you like running?
- Have you ever run a long-distance?
- Would you prefer to watch a running competition live or on TV?
- Do you think running is a good way to stay healthy?

1. Do you like running?

Not much. I have vague memories of participating in running races when I was in school. Nowadays, I run only when my friends call me. It was just last week when we chose to run around a hill. We completed a full circle. We also took in some medicinal air because the hill was full of herbs.

2. Have you ever run a long-distance?

Well, my Company organizes marathons once in a while. My friends forced me to participate in it. So, I have run some marathons. It feels nice when you run across places of scenic beauty with friends around. We also do barefoot running occasionally.

3. Would you prefer to watch a running competition live or on TV?

I prefer to watch it on television. It is interesting to find out who the fastest runner is. I do tune in to watch the Olympics and find out where my country stands.

4. Do you think running is a good way to stay healthy?

Undoubtedly, yes. Most importantly, it helps in improving cardiovascular fitness. But, unfortunately, most people have restricted themselves to treadmills now.

VOCABULARY



race(noun) - a competition between runners, horses, vehicles, etc. to see which is the fastest in covering a set course.
Eg: He won in the bike race.

Marathon (noun) - a long-distance running race, strictly one of 26 miles 385 yards (42.195 km)
Eg: She won a gold medal in the marathon for girls.

Barefoot running (adj phrase) - the act of running without footwear.
Eg: Barefoot running helps in strengthening the muscles.

Treadmills (noun) - a device used for exercise, consisting of a continuous moving belt on which to walk or run.
Eg: Treadmill test is conducted to check the functioning of the heart.

14. PARKS

- Are there many parks near where you live?
- Do you like going to the parks?
- Do you think there are enough parks or gardens in your hometown?
- What did you use to do in parks as a child?

1. Are there many parks near where you live?

Yes, there are quite a few of them. The national government has issued a mandate to all the local governments to build parks to develop community building. So, there are many projects on parks coming up. They have planned to establish two new parks near our area. I read it in the newspapers.

2. Do you like going to the parks?

I'm very fond of Gibb's Garden near my house. It has a small pond as well. I go there on weekends to relax and enjoy the fresh air.

3. Do you think there are enough parks or gardens in your hometown?

We have one large garden in the centre of the city, but there are also several parks in the suburbs. So, I think we have just the right number of parks in our town.

4. What did you use to do in parks as a child?

I had loads of fun in the park nearby. It had a see-saw, and I enjoyed going up and down on it. We had other children from the neighbourhood who joined me in playing. We had a miniature version of the merry-go-round which we thoroughly enjoyed.

VOCABULARY

Garden (noun) - a piece of ground adjoining a house, in which grass, flowers, and shrubs may be grown.
Eg: There was a garden near his house

Pond (noun) - a small body of still water formed naturally or by artificial means.



Eg: There was a lotus pond in the middle of the village.

Relax (verb) - make or become less tense or anxious.
Eg: The hair spa was very relaxing.

Seesaw (noun) - a long plank balanced in the middle on a fixed support, on each end of which children sit and swing up and down by pushing the ground alternately with their feet.
Eg: Kids enjoy going up and down in the seesaw.

15. NEIGHBOURHOOD / LOCAL AREA

- Do you like the area that you live in?
- Do you know any famous people in your local area?
- Where do you like to go, in that area?
- What are some recent changes in your local area?

1. Do you like the area that you live in currently?

I have recently moved to Indira Nagar in Adyar. I purchased an apartment here after I got a hike in my Company. It is covered by trees on both sides of the road. It is quite sedate. I take pride in myself for buying an apartment here.

2. Do you know any famous people in your local area?

Well, I know some people from the Exnora and Rotary clubs. I love to get indulged in Exnora's activities like planting saplings and join the rotary club in its service-oriented activities.

3. Where do you like to go, in that area?

Adyar is quite big. I want to go to Lattice Bridge road where there are merchants of different types. It is a bustling road, but I love to take an evening stroll. It is intriguing to see people roaming busily across the street.

4. What are some recent changes in your local area?

There are lots of boutiques coming up. Also, I saw a new beauty parlour on my way home last night. Some residents have sold their houses, and flats are being constructed in those places.

VOCABULARY

Apartment (noun) - is a room or suite of rooms designed as a residence and generally located in a building occupied by more than one household.
Eg: She lived in a prestigious apartment.

Sedate (adjective) - quiet
Eg: It was a sedate suburban society.

Club (noun) - an association dedicated to a particular interest or activity.
Eg: I'm a part of the nature club.

Residents (noun) - a person who lives somewhere permanently or on a long-term basis.

Eg: It is a beautiful place with just 40 residents.

16. WALKING

- Do you often walk?
- Where do you walk?
- Do you think you walk enough?
- Do you think people will walk more in the future?

1. Do you often walk?

I don't do it religiously as an exercise. But I do get chances to walk for some time in a day.

2. Where do you walk?

I walk inside my office. After parking the vehicle, I have to walk some distance to reach my building in the office. In the evenings, I walk back to the car parking area. This is my walking schedule every day.

3. Do you think you walk enough?

To be honest, I work out on the treadmill, half-an-hour every day and believe that it helps. Other than that, I walk in the nearby parks on weekends.

4. Do you think people will walk more in the future?

With the advent of devices like treadmills, walking has ceased among the urbane community. The rural community is also progressing rapidly. People are keen to modernize their lives. So, it is quite doubtful that people will want to walk in the future.

VOCABULARY

Exercise (noun) - activity requiring physical effort, carried out to sustain or improve health and fitness.
Eg: Exercise improves blood circulation.

Schedule (noun) - a plan for carrying out a process or procedure, giving lists of intended events and times.
Eg: He has a hectic morning schedule

Ceased (verb) - come or bring to an end.
Eg: The pandemic ceased and lockdowns were lifted.

Modernize (verb) - adapt (something) to modern needs or habits, typically by installing modern equipment or adopting modern ideas or methods.
Eg: They modernized the school.

17. LANGUAGES

- Which languages do you speak?



- What are the common languages in your country?
- Would you like to learn a new language?
- Is it important to speak a foreign language?

1. Which languages do you speak?
Apart from English and my native language, I know French. In high school, I had the option to choose any foreign language as a major. I chose French and also enrolled in Alliance Francaise. We enacted the 'Tenali Raman' drama in French, which I fondly recall every time I talk in French.

2. What are the common languages in your country?
I take pride in saying we speak around 22 official languages in our country. There are 29 states in India, and each state has its own language. But you need not know all of them. You can survive with Hindi and English which you can also call as common languages.

3. Would you like to learn a new language?
Yes, of course. I work for a Japanese company. So, I'm very much interested to learn Japanese, so that I can impress my clients. Also, Japanese and Spanish translators are paid well in corporate companies.

4. Is it important to speak a foreign language?
It will give you an edge over others in terms of career. Your connectivity improves. You not only learn the language but the culture of that particular nation. The fact that you will be able to gel well with a new community will be extremely beneficial in your career.

VOCABULARY

Native language (adj phrase) - the language of the country that someone is born in or native to
Eg: French was his native language.

Official language (adj phrase) - a language given a special status in a particular country, state, or other jurisdiction
Eg: Tamil is an official language in India.

Translators (noun) - a person who translates from one language into another, especially as a profession.
Eg: Japanese translators are paid well.

Foreign language (adj phrase) - a language originally from another country than the speaker.
Eg: Indians speak good English, though it is a foreign language for them.

18. PUBLIC HOLIDAYS

- How many public holidays do you have in your country?
- Which public holiday is your favourite?
- What do you usually do on a public holiday?
- Do you think people need more public holidays?



1. How many public holidays do you have in your country?

Well, I cannot be accurate but can give a try. The festival season starts with Ganesh Chaturthi in August. From then on, we have an array of festivals till Christmas in December. Then we have the national holidays like Republic day in January and Independence Day in August. So, there's a fairly good number of holidays for us.

2. Which public holiday is your favourite?

Diwali, without a doubt. I enjoy the fireworks and sound of the crackers and burst them too. I love to light the flower pots and rockets. Also, I cannot forget the number of delicacies that are prepared on that day. It is lovely to see the smiling faces of people and the love and affection with which they wish "Happy Diwali" to each other.

3. What do you usually do on a public holiday?

It depends on the nature of the holiday. If it is a festival, we thoroughly enjoy the day. If it is a day of national importance like Independence Day, we revere the sacrifices of our ancestors.

4. Do you think people need more public holidays?

Yes, I do think so! Corporate companies are so smart that they have introduced a concept called optional holidays. So, we don't get to enjoy all the holidays in a year. This concept should be abolished, and everyone should get to enjoy all the holidays.

VOCABULARY

Festivals (noun) - a day or period of celebration, typically for religious reasons.
Eg: She celebrates festivals in a grand manner

Firecrackers (noun) - A firecracker (cracker, noise maker, banger,) is a small explosive device primarily designed to produce a large amount of noise, especially in the form of a loud bang, usually for celebration or entertainment.
Eg: People enjoy bursting firecrackers on Diwali.

National holiday (adj phrase) -a nationally recognized day when most businesses and other institutions are closed.
Eg: All shops are closed on national holidays

Optional holiday (adj phrase) - The holiday which is optional for each individual employee and each employee can decide whether he/she wants to take a leave on that day or not.
Eg: Ramzan was an optional holiday for Hindus in ABC Company.

19. MUSIC

- When do you listen to music?
- How much time do you spend listening to music every day?



- What kinds of music do you like to listen to?
- Have you ever been to a concert before?

1. When do you listen to music?

I listen to music, whenever and wherever I can. I usually enjoy listening to my playlists when going on a long drive in my car. Listening to music at such moments will raise your spirits.

2. How much time do you spend listening to music every day?

Almost every day, when I'm back from work. I listen to music when I prepare dinner. After a hard day at work, it is very relaxing and refreshing to listen to music. It replenishes your energy.

3. What kinds of music do you enjoy listening to?

I like to listen to a variety of music from Carnatic music to film songs. I like the fusion kind of music where you have both classical and western renderings. I also like Ghazals.

4. Have you ever been to a concert before?

Sadly, No. But given a chance, I would like to attend the Bryan Adams concert. I want to see him performing live. I have just moved to the UK for work, and I look forward to attending one, very soon.

VOCABULARY

Carnatic music (adj phrase) - form of music that is associated with the southern part of India with its area roughly confined to five states of India i.e. Kerala, Karnataka, Tamil Nadu, Andhra Pradesh and Telangana.
Eg: Saritha visited the carnatic vocal concerts in December.

Renderings (noun) - a performance of a piece of music or drama.
Eg: It was an exotic rendering of "Eye of the tiger".

Concert (noun) - a musical performance given in public, typically by several performers or of several compositions.
Eg: A pop concert was being organised in Oregon.

Ghazals (noun) - (in Middle Eastern and Indian literature and music) a lyric poem with a fixed number of verses and a repeated rhyme, typically on the theme of love, and normally set to music.
Eg: She attended classes for Ghazals which is why she is able to sing them well.

20. AGE

- Do you like your current age?
- What do you like about it?
- At what age do you think people are the happiest?
- What was the most important decision you have made?



1. **Do you like your current age?**

Yeah, definitely. I'm happy to be the age I'm in right now, because it has made me wise. It feels great to be alive and to have experienced so much about the world.

2. **What do you like about it?**

As you get older, you are settling in your life. Your accomplishments bring you a sense of joy. It is surprising that you get rid of petty qualities like jealousy and contempt, with age. You tend to become more loving and magnanimous.

3. **At what age do you think people are the happiest?**

I think people are happiest in their fifties. It is neither young nor too old. Most of them would have been settled by then. It is my opinion that people would be wise and content at this age.

4. **What was the most important decision you have made?**

The most important decision I made is to settle in the UK. I moved to the UK for work reasons but later the opportunity extended and I felt fairly at home in the UK. I thought I could manage myself well here. So, I got my parents to stay with me.

VOCABULARY

Alive (adj) - (of a person, animal, or plant) living, not dead.
Eg: They captured the tiger alive.

Experienced (adj) - having gained knowledge or skill in a particular field over time.
Eg: Sita was an experienced gynaecologist.

Settling in life (adj phrase) - what someone does when they have a job/career that makes them happy and provides for their needs, and they have a husband/wife (and possibly children) and have a home.
Eg: Ram is in his late forties and has settled down in his life.

Decision (noun) - a conclusion or resolution reached after consideration.
Eg: Jack takes his own decisions.

21. TRAVEL

- Do you like travelling?
- Which cities have you travelled to?
- What kind of cities do you like to travel to?
- Which city left the deepest impression on you?

1. Do you like travelling?

I would like to go on a world tour. The fact that I've started earning in the UK gives me confidence that I can make my dream come true. I want to travel both by air and by sea. I



have read the “Adventures of Rusty” when I was very young and that inspired me for sea travel.

2. Which cities have you travelled to?

I have been to many places in India. I have seen the India gate and Taj Mahal, Ajanta and Ellora caves, Dakshineshwar Kali and the snow in Kashmir.

3. What kind of cities do you like to travel to?

I love History. I want to explore historic places that I have read in books. So, I prefer to visit cities with a rich cultural heritage and there are plenty of them in India.

4. Which city left the deepest impression on you?

Undoubtedly Calcutta. It was the original British Capital. I loved it so much. I have a photograph of me, standing on the Howrah Bridge. I experienced the spiritual vibes of Ramakrishna paramahamsa in the Dakshineshwar temple. I also visited the “Missionaries of charity” and got an autograph from the current superior General. I treasure it.

VOCABULARY

Tour (noun) - a journey for pleasure in which several different places are visited.
Eg: Swetha went on a tour of Europe.

Explore (verb) - travel through (an unfamiliar area) in order to learn about it
Eg: They explored the forest.

Cultural Heritage (adj) - an expression of the ways of living developed by a community and passed on from generation to generation, including customs, practices, places, objects, artistic expressions and values
Eg: We are determined to preserve our unique cultural heritage for future generations.

Bridge (noun) - a structure carrying a road, path, railway, etc. across a river, road, or other obstacle.
Eg: He made his way up to the Bridge

22. BREAKS

- Do you prefer a long break or several short breaks?
- How often do you take a break?
- What do you usually do during a break?
- Why do you need to take a break?

1. Do you prefer a long break or several short breaks?

I prefer to take several shot breaks because it revives my energy and I can be back at work fully charged. Long breaks tend to make you lazy and ultimately lose motivation to work.



2. **How often do you take a break?**

I reach the office at 8 in the morning and leave at 7 in the evening. So, I take a number of short breaks spanning 5 mins, every 1 hour.

3. **What do you usually do during a break?**

I usually go for a coffee or grab a biscuit. If I'm very hungry I go to the cafeteria and have something substantial.

4. **Why do you need to take a break?**

Science reveals that human beings can be productive only for 6 hours in a day. When we work continuously, we develop fatigue and our capacity decreases. So, it is essential that we take some breaks.

VOCABULARY

Revive (verb) - give new strength or energy to.
Eg: The cool air revived us.

Spanning (verb) - extend across (a period of time or a range of subjects).
Eg: His interest spanned across all branches of History.

Productive (adj) - producing or able to produce large amounts of goods, crops, or other commodities
Eg: His employees were very productive.

Fatigue (noun) - extreme tiredness resulting from mental or physical exertion or illness.
Eg: Soon after the morning workout, he was dying out of fatigue.

23.PENS AND PENCILS

- Do you prefer to use a pen or a pencil for writing?
- When was the last time you bought a pen or a pencil?
- How would you feel if someone gave you a pen or a pencil as a gift?

1. **Do you prefer to use a pen or a pencil for writing?**

I prefer an ink pen over pencils or ball point pens because my teachers had always insisted on using one. Using an ink pen is said to improve handwriting. But now that I work in an IT company, everything is digitized and we hardly use pens or pencils.

2. **When was the last time you bought a pen or a pencil?**

Like I said before, we store everything in computers. So, it's been a long while since I went to a stationary shop to buy a pen or pencil. But I did place a request for a marker in my office stationery app.

3. **How would you feel if someone gave you a pen or a pencil as a gift?**



I would be overjoyed. I still have the parker pen gifted by my dad on my table. It cost a fortune to get that pen those days.

VOCABULARY

Ballpoint pen (noun) - a pen with a tiny ball as its writing point, especially one using stiffer ink than a rollerball.
Eg: He seldom used ballpoint pens.

Handwriting (noun) - a person's particular style of writing.
Eg: His handwriting was neat.

Stationery (noun) -writing and other office materials.
Eg: He bought some stationery items from the shop.

Costs a fortune (noun phrase) - to cost a lot of money
Eg: It cost a fortune to get the house painted.

24. SPENDING TIME BY YOURSELF

- Do you like spending time by yourself?
- How do you usually spend your time by yourself?
- What did you do last time when you were by yourself?

1. **Do you like spending time by yourself?**

Well, I need some time for myself and will not compromise on it. But that doesn't mean I'm a loner. It is only a little while after which I connect myself to people.

2. **How do you usually spend your time by yourself?**

Well, I read a book, listen to some soothing music, lie down on the bed and have a nap, talk to my friend over the phone or tidy up things at home.

3. **What did you do last time when you were by yourself?**

I was working. I had to finish a deadline and I was hooked on my work. Because I was working alone on a Saturday, I was able to work without any distraction.

VOCABULARY

Loner (noun) - a person that prefers not to associate with others.
Eg: Shyam was a loner.
Soothing (adj) - having a gently calming effect.
Eg: She was listening to a soothing music.

Nap (verb) - sleep lightly or briefly, especially during the day.
Eg: She usually takes a nap during the afternoons.

Distraction (noun) - a thing that prevents someone from concentrating on something else.



Eg: Sita did not do well in exams, because she had many distractions.

25. WILD ANIMALS

- Have you ever seen wild animals before?
- Which wild animals do you like the most?
- Do you like to go to the zoo?

1. **Have you ever seen wild animals before?**

Well, I remember having gone to a zoo when I was in the 11th grade. We opted for a lion safari. It was pretty scary as one of the lions pounced on the front and back of our van.

2. **Which wild animals do you like the most?**

I admire tigers. I like watching them hunting for their prey in National Geographic. Apart from that I love their eyes. They have beautiful eyes that glitter at night.

3. **Do you like to go to the zoo?**

Yes, I would love to. It is such a hilarious sight to watch a monkey pick louse from another monkey. I also enjoy watching the elephants bathe, observing cheetahs and tigers growl in their cages.

VOCABULARY

Zoo (noun) - an establishment which maintains a collection of wild animals, typically in a park or gardens, for study, conservation, or display to the public.
Eg: Tom took his kids to the zoo.

Safari (noun) - It can be defined as a forest trail, except that instead of walking, hiking or trekking, you have also got the options of exploring the forest regions via a jeep.
Eg: We watched the lions in the safety of a Safari.

Prey (noun) - an animal that is hunted and killed by another for food.
Eg: The Lion pounced on its prey.

Cage (noun) - a structure of bars or wires in which birds or other animals are confined.
Eg: She kept parrots in a cage.

26. LAUGHTER

- When was the last time you laughed?
- Do you like watching funny programmes on TV?
- Do you like to make people laugh?
- Do you think it is important for friends to laugh together?

1. **When was the last time you laughed?**



It was at my college farewell party. There was a comedy show organized to entertain us. The show was too good and I laughed out loud, too loud, I guess. I came back to my senses when I noticed people staring at me.

2. **Do you like watching funny programmes on TV?**

Who doesn't enjoy watching them? I love to watch such programmes as they make you forget your worries.

3. **Do you like to make people laugh?**

Yes, I love to. People usually say that I'm gifted with a good sense of humour. It dilutes the intensity of a tough situation and makes you think out of the box.

4. **Do you think it is important for friends to laugh together?**

Laughter is a medicine. You definitely need those light hearted moments with your friends. It feels wonderful to let go of the tension in the mind and enjoy yourself with friends.

VOCABULARY

Comedy (noun) - professional entertainment consisting of jokes and sketches, intended to make an audience laugh.
Eg: She spent a lot on Comedy shows.

Worries (noun) - the state of being anxious and troubled over actual or potential problems.
Eg: She was always in a constant state of worry.

Humour (noun) - the quality of being amusing or comic, especially as expressed in literature or speech.
Eg: Dick had a good sense of humour.

Light hearted (adj) - amusing and entertaining.
Eg: He met his old friends and had a light hearted chat

27. CAKES AND DESSERTS

- Do you like eating cakes?
- Have you ever made a cake?
- Do you like having desserts?
- What desserts are popular in your country?

1. **Do you like eating cakes?**

Well, I have a sweet tooth. I relish chocolate cakes. Chocolate truffles are my favourite.

2. **Have you ever made a cake?**

Yes. I have made cake on a stove. I put all my creativity into it. I sprinkled dried fruits, almond kernels and pistachios into the batter and the chocolate cake tasted just great!



3. **Do you like having desserts?**

Be it a cake or ice cream or some traditional recipe, I would like to try them all. I would call it the best part of the meal.

4. **What desserts are popular in your country?**

Cookies, pastries, candies, cakes and what not! People in my country don't hesitate to try out anything sugary.

VOCABULARY

Sweet tooth (noun) - a great liking for sweet-tasting foods.
Eg: His grandfather had a sweet tooth.

Relish (verb) - enjoy greatly.
Eg: She relished the sweet spaghetti sauce.

Pastries (noun) - a dough of flour, fat, and water, used as a base and covering in baked dishes such as pies.
Eg: Please spread the gratings over the pastry.

Candies (noun) - sweets; confectionery.
Eg: She put a candy into her mouth.

28. CONCENTRATION

- What helps you concentrate?
- What stops you from concentrating?
- What do you do when you can't concentrate?

1. **What helps you concentrate?**

When I'm doing some important work, I switch off my mobile phone. This helps me to focus more on what I'm doing. Of late, I have been doing Yoga, which helps me greatly.

2. **What stops you from concentrating?**

Lack of good sleep and multitasking. If I sleep less, I won't be able to concentrate the next morning. If too many things are spinning at a time, it is difficult to focus.

3. **What do you do when you can't concentrate?**

I try to put off my mobile phones, close the email tab in my browser and wear headphones so that other noises don't distract me. I also make a mini priority list on my own. This helps me to complete things in order. The more I complete, the more confident I become.

VOCABULARY

Focus (verb) - pay particular attention to.
Eg: The Biology teacher focused more on cockroaches.

Yoga (noun) - a Hindu spiritual and ascetic discipline, a part of which, including breath control, simple meditation, and the adoption of specific bodily postures, is widely practised for health and relaxation.
Eg: She attended the yoga classes without fail.

Multitasking (verb) - (of a person) deal with more than one task at the same time.
Eg: Harry was not good at multitasking.

Headphones (noun) - a pair of earphones joined by a band placed over the head, for listening to audio signals such as music or speech.
Eg: I was listening to Beethoven through my headphones.

29. BEAUTIFUL SCENERY

- In your country, are there many places to see beautiful scenery?
- Do you like to visit places with beautiful views when you are travelling?
- Do you like to take pictures of beautiful scenery?

1. **In your country, are there many places to see beautiful scenery?**

We have enough scenic places in India. We have the Western Ghats, Eastern Ghats and the Himalayas to name a few. There are umpty number of falls and rivers and many other exotic places being discovered every day.

2. **Do you like to visit places with beautiful views when you are travelling?**

Yes, I do. Whenever I come across any breathtaking scenery I stop by. Otherwise I just witness the sun and the moon, enjoying their different variants of light from morning to night.

3. **Do you like to take pictures of beautiful scenery?**

Yes, of course. I want to capture every single moment I enjoy. Because you never know if you will get to see it once again. For instance, you see pink clouds this moment and the next moment they turn orange. Nature is very playful. You ought to carefully record it, else you will miss it forever.

VOCABULARY

Ghats (noun) - (in South Asia) a mountain pass.
Eg: He did not drive well in the ghat section.

Waterfalls (noun) - a cascade of water falling from a height, formed when a river or stream flows over a precipice or steep incline.
Eg: There is a waterfalls next to the village.

Breathtaking (adj) - astonishing or awe-inspiring in quality, so as to take one's breath away
Eg: The Himalayas are a breathtaking beauty.

Clouds (noun) - a visible mass of condensed watery vapour floating in the atmosphere, typically high above the general level of the ground.

Eg: The moon was hidden by dark clouds.

30. HISTORY

- Do you like history?
- Did you enjoy learning history when you were a child?
- When was the last time you read about history?
- Do you think history is important?

1. **Do you like history?**

I love History. Learning about the past fascinates me, to this day. I not only read it in books, but make sure I visit those places in person. For instance, I toured Hassan near Karnataka in my 7th grade after having read about it in my sixth grade. I have a long list of such places to go.

2. **Did you enjoy learning history when you were a child?**

I did. It was inspirational to learn about warriors, patriotic when learning about freedom fighters, intriguing when learning about Mughals and the British. I was once given a task to find out why Indians could easily accept Mughals as rulers and not the British. I loved such interesting assignments.

3. **When was the last time you read about history?**

Well, it was a year ago when someone gave me the book “White Mughals” as a gift. I was impressed about the way the culture got mingled between the leading characters in the book, one of whom is English and the other a Muslim.

4. **Do you think history is important?**

Yes, it is important. I go by the opinion of Machiavelli that whoever wishes to foresee the future must consult the past. We also get a chance to learn from the mistakes of our ancestors.

VOCABULARY

Warriors (noun) - (especially in former times) a brave or experienced soldier or fighter.
Eg: Chatrapti Shivaji was a true warrior.

Patriotic (adj) - having or expressing devotion to and vigorous support for one's country.
Eg: The cricket match will be watched by a patriotic crowd.

Culture (noun) - the ideas, customs, and social behaviour of a particular people or society.
Eg: Westerners have great respect for Indian culture.

Ancestors (noun) - a person, typically one more remote than a grandparent, from whom one is descended.
Eg: It was because of the hard work of his ancestors that he is rich now.

31. COFFEE OR TEA

- Do you like coffee or tea?
- Do you remember when you drank coffee/tea for the first time?
- Do you offer coffee and tea to visitors when they come to your home?
- What are the benefits of drinking coffee or tea?

1. **Do you like coffee or tea?**

Day breaks in most south Indian homes with a hot cup of filter coffee. I love to wake up to the strong aroma of coffee. I believe it gives the whole energy needed for the day.

2. **Do you remember when you drank coffee/tea for the first time?**

India is a tropical country. So, we have coffee farms in abundance. Coffee is like water for us. So, we start drinking coffee, right from our childhood. And I'm no exception. I don't remember much when I first had it.

3. **Do you offer coffee and tea to visitors when they come to your home?**

Well, if they are complete strangers, I check out what they prefer. Otherwise, I always offer them a hot cup of coffee.

4. **What are the benefits of drinking coffee or tea?**

Well, Coffee contains caffeine and tea contains theobromine. Both are good if taken in moderation. Addiction to either of them will yield adverse results.

VOCABULARY

Aroma (noun) - a distinctive, typically pleasant smell.
Eg: It was an inviting aroma of roses.

Caffeine (noun) - an alkaloid compound which is found especially in tea and coffee plants and is a stimulant of the central nervous system.
Eg: Some are of the opinion that caffeine fights cancer.

Theobromine (noun) - a bitter, volatile compound obtained from cacao seeds. It is an alkaloid resembling caffeine in its physiological effects.
Eg: Some fear that high levels of theobromine are toxic.

Addiction (noun) - the fact or condition of being addicted to a particular substance or activity.
Eg: Drug addiction is dangerous.

32. SLEEP

- How many hours do you sleep every day (or every night)?
- Do you think it's good to have a nap during the day?
- Do you think old people need more sleep than young people?
- Have your sleeping habits changed since you were younger?

1. **How many hours do you sleep every day (or every night)?**

Usually I sleep around 7-8 hours every day. But if I have deadlines to meet, I go to bed at odd hours and barely get 4-5 hours of sleep.

2. **Do you think it's good to have a nap during the day?**

Yes. Japanese companies allow their employees to take a power nap and they have proved it to be beneficial.

3. **Do you think old people need more sleep than young people?**

I think old people can manage with a minimum amount of sleep. In general, the amount of sleep decreases as you get older. Old people usually take pills to fall asleep. But it also varies from person to person.

4. **Have your sleeping habits changed since you were younger?**

Yes, it has changed drastically. When I was young, I used to sleep for 12 hours. But as I grew older, it decreased. Nowadays, it depends on the extent of my exhaustion. Sometimes I do sleep for 9 hours.

VOCABULARY

Odd hours (adj phrase) - Unusual hours
Eg: He world at odd hours sometimes.

Power nap (noun) - a short sleep taken during the working day in order to restore one's mental alertness
Eg: He got permission from his Boss to take a power nap in the afternoon.

Pills (noun) - a small round mass of solid medicine for swallowing whole.
Eg: You should not get addicted to sleeping pills.

Exhaustion (noun) - a state of extreme physical or mental tiredness.
Eg: Jane grew pale with exhaustion.

33. FRIENDS

- Do you have a lot of friends?
- What do you do with your friends?
- Is it important to have a lot of friends?

1. **Do you have a lot of friends?**

Not lots. But I do have some close ones. I had many friends when I was in school. As you get old, it is difficult to find people with common interests. So, I'm quite happy that I managed to get close, at least to a few.

2. **What do you do with your friends?**



We often get to meet. One of my friends is an artist and she conducts an art exhibition every now and then. Another friend of mine runs a cookery class. She also hosts cookery shows on TV. Sometimes, she invites us to participate in her shows.

3. Is it important to have a lot of friends?

It is important to have friends but the number does not matter. Friendships make our lives delightful. They add more meaning to our life.

VOCABULARY

Common interests (adj phrase) - A shared interest in a specific subject that brings people together to form a community; it structures interaction and exchange within that community.
Eg: Ashley and David shared common interests.

Friendship (noun) - the emotions or conduct of friends; the state of being friends.
Eg: He revived his old friendships through facebook.

Artist (noun) - a person who creates paintings or drawings as a profession or hobby.
Eg : Mira was an artist.

Delightful (adj) - causing great pleasure.
Eg: It was a delightful conversation.

34. HOME/ ACCOMMODATION

- What kind of housing/accommodation do you live in?
- Who do you live with?
- How long have you lived there?
- What's the difference between where you are living now and where you have lived in the past?
- Do you plan to live there for a long time?
- Which room does your family spend most of the time in?
- Are the transport facilities to your home very good?
- Do you prefer living in a house or a flat?
- Please describe the room you live in.
- What part of your home do you like the most?

1. What kind of housing/accommodation do you live in?

I live in a terraced house that has a living room, a kitchen, three bed rooms, two bathrooms and a lovely back garden. It's not really a spacious house, but it's just right for me and my family.

2.Who do you live with?

I live with my parents and my siblings. We always get on well with each other and have a lot of fun.

3.How long have you lived there?

I've lived there since I was a child, until I graduated from high school and moved to the city to enroll at university, where I lived in a student dormitory during the semester. (If you answer you haven't lived there long)

4.What's the difference between where you are living now and where you have lived in the past?

Living in a dorm with other roommates is totally different from living in my own house. My current residential area is quite small and it's very noisy because there are a lot of people there and I don't have my own space. Conversely, when I was living at home, I had my own spacious room and it made me feel comfortable.

5. Do you plan to live there for a long time?

To be honest, I intend to buy an apartment in an urban area after I graduate from university.I can decorate and design my ideal home with whatever facilities I want.

6. Which room does your family spend most of the time in?

It's definitely the kitchen. Not only lunch or dinner time but all our family reunions take place in the kitchen where all the family members get together to eat tasty meals, and chat to each other – it's a really harmonious atmosphere.

7. Are the transport facilities to your home very good?

To be honest, most of the transport facilities to my place are not very modern. The bus service from my work place to home is irregular and usually overcrowded.

8. Do you prefer living in a house or a flat?

I prefer living in a house to a flat because I value my privacy and need my own space. Owning an independent house, I can plan and design a house layout to suit myself. Moreover, I can modify a house according to the size of the family.

9. Please describe the room you live in.

My current room is actually more like a bedsit. It is a multi – purpose room, I use it to sleep and study as well. It is painted in pink, that's my favourite colour with a bed, a cupboard and desk. It's not really spacious but it's just right for me.

10. What part of your home do you like the most?

I prefer my bedroom most due to its convenience and privacy. Because of my stressful work I want to be in a quiet place and concentrate on my work. In my own room, I'm never disturbed by anyone else. Moreover, in my own space I can do whatever I want without bothering others.

VOCABULARY

Terraced house (noun): a house connected on both sides by other properties
Ex: In England, most people seem to live in terraced houses with lovely back gardens.

Back garden (noun phrase): a garden at the rear of the house.



Ex: I live in a terraced house that has a living room, a kitchen, three bed rooms, two bathrooms and a lovely back garden.

Spacious (adjective): (of a room or building) large and with plenty of space for people to move around in
Ex: The hotel rooms are spacious and comfortable.

Sibling(s) (noun): a brother or sister
Ex: The younger children were badly treated by older siblings.

Get on well with somebody (phrasal verb): to have a friendly relationship with somebody
Ex: She and her sister have never really got on well with each other.

Dormitory (noun): a room for several people to sleep in, especially in a school or other institution
Ex: I've lived there since I was a child, until I graduated high school and moved to the city to enroll in university where I lived in a dormitory.

Residential area (noun): (of an area of a town) suitable for living in; consisting of houses rather than factories or offices
Ex: It was not safe to locate the chemicals factory in a residential area.

Urban area (noun): connected with a town or city
Ex: Pollution has reached disturbingly high levels in some urban areas.

Reunion (noun): a social occasion or party attended by a group of people who have not seen each other for a long time
Ex: The College has an annual reunion for former students.

Harmonious (adjective): friendly, peaceful and without any disagreement
Ex: It is important to have harmonious relations between the country's ethnic groups.

Irregular (adjective): not happening at the arranged time intervals
Ex: His irregular attendance at school resulted in his failure in the final exams.

Overcrowded (adjective): with too many people or things in it
Ex: The train was so overcrowded this evening that I was unable to find an empty seat.

Privacy (noun): being alone and not disturbed by other people
Ex: I read the letter in the privacy of my own room.

Suit oneself (verb): to do exactly what you like/want
Ex: Everyone had a different opinion about what colour to paint my room, so in the end I decided to just suit myself.

Modify (verb): to change something slightly, especially in order to make it more suitable for a particular purpose
Ex: We found it cheaper to modify the existing equipment rather than buy new.

Bedsit (noun): a room that a person rents and uses for both living and sleeping in
Ex: He lives in a tiny student bedsit used for both sleeping and studying.

Multi-purpose (adjective): having many different uses

Ex: This room is multi-purpose – we use it for meetings, interviews and taking breaks.

35. STUDY

- Describe your education
- What is your area of specialization?
- Why did you choose to study that major?
- Do you like your major? (Why? /Why not?)
- What kind of school did you go to as a child?
- What was your favourite subject as a child?
- Do you think your country has an effective education system?
- (Possibly) Are you looking forward to working?

1. Describe your education

I started primary school when I was 7. 5 years later, I went to secondary school at 12. Then at 16, I made it to a high school for gifted students in my hometown. In my country, highschool education lasts 3 years, then I went onto **higher education** at the Foreign Trade University where I'm currently studying economics.

2. What is your area of specialization?

Well, my major is External Economics. I have **mastered** the basics of economics and socioeconomics, combined with business knowledge mainly related to the import and export business.

3. Why did you choose to study that major?

I think it would help to **fulfill my dream** of introducing my country's agricultural products to the world. Vietnamese goods have a real potential, but they still struggle to **make a name for themselves**, you know.

4. Do you like your major? (Why? /Why not?)

Yes, of course. Studying economics, especially external economics is interesting and practical. It helps me to **keep up with** current affair**s** and **it** improve**s** my **analytical** and problem-solving skills as well.

5. What kind of school did you go to as a child?

As a child, I attended a **public elementary school**. It's quite a big school in my hometown which provides both high quality education and a supportive environment, so I think I was quite lucky.

6. What was your favourite subject as a child?

Well, I used to be very **passionate about** drawing when I was a little girl. It was fun to work with brushes and colors, you know, as it was the time when I could **indulge in** my own creative world.

7. Do you think your country has an effective education system?

To be honest, I don't think so. Our system has somehow become **unduly** stressful, does not promote creativity and the ability to be critical due to the fact that our society still cares way too much about grades and schools consequently focuses on an **exam-driven curriculum**, which I find quite impractical.

8. (Possibly) Are you looking forward to working?

Absolutely! It's great to join the **workforce**, especially when I can do the job I love. Not only will it **pay the bills**, but it'll also give me the joy of making a contribution. It's hard to be happy and fulfilled without working, you know.

VOCABULARY

Higher education [n] post-18 learning that take places at universities
Example: According to a research, nearly 50 percent of Vietnamese students in U.S. **higher education** are studying either business or engineering, with business-related majors making up 38 percent of all enrolments in 2012/13.

Master [v] learn how to do something well
Example: She lived in Italy for several years but never quite **mastered** the language.

Make a name for oneself [idiom] become famous and respected by a lot of people
Example: *By the time he was thirty-five, he had made a name for himself as a successful railway contractor*.

Keep up with [idiom] be aware of
Example: *Even though he's been travelling, he's kept up with what's going on back home*.

Analytical [adj] using analysis or logical reasoning
Example: Analytical skills are essential in the workplace to ensure necessary problem solving occurs to keep productivity and other areas of the workforce functioning smoothly.

Elementary school [n] primary school, school for children between 7-11 years old (in Vietnam)
Example: It's essential that children at the official entry age for **elementary school** attend classes fully.

Unduly [adj] excessively/ to a level that more than is necessary, acceptable, or reasonable
Example: For every new parent, the decision about whether to vaccinate his or her child has been **unduly** stressful

Exam-driven curriculum [expression] the courses taught a school, college, which focus on teaching what will be on the exam
Example: Many parents believe that **exam-driven curriculum** can change their kid's attitude towards school in profoundly negative ways.

Pay the bills [idioms] provide enough income to sustain one's lifestyle
Example: Being a dentist isn't so glamorous, but it **pays the bills**.

36. WORK

- What do you do?
- What are your responsibilities?
- Why did you choose to do that type of work (or, that job)?
- Is there some other kind of work you would rather do?
- Describe the company or organization you work for
- Do you enjoy your work?
- What do you like about your job?
- What do you dislike about your job?
- (Possibly)Do you miss being a student?

1. What do you do?

I'm currently working as a graphic designer for a fashion magazine for youngsters

2. What are your responsibilities?

Well I'm mainly responsible for designing the cover of the magazine. I normally work with the concept team to make sure that the final product will both attract the potential buyer's attention and express the **theme** of the magazine.

3. Why did you choose to do that type of work (or, that job)?

I guess it's because of my **artistic passion**. The process of creating beautiful things is somehow **intriguing** to me, so I chose to be a graphic designer, which combines both art and technology. It's quite interesting, you know.

4. Is there some other kind of work you would rather do?

Well, if possible, I'd like to be a freelance writer. Actually, I'm a big fan of action movies, and I also care about healthy living, so, I'd love to write about these topics and share my stories with people of the same interest.

5. Describe the company or organization you work for

My company is not huge, it's just a small art designoffice, but is definitely an inspirational workplace with a young, creative, and extremely passionate team. We work **on the basis of** mutual understanding and respect for each other, so it's kind of an ideal environment for me.

6. Do you enjoy your work?

Most of the time. It's **rewarding** to co-work on projects with amazing people in an open and supportive environment to bring out an art production that will **ultimately** give me a sense of satisfaction and pride.



7. What do you like about your job?

Well, **the perk of** being a graphic designer is that you'll surround yourself with inspiring images every day. My daily working life involves seeking out inspiration in all sorts of places, researching incredible illustrations and graphics, and creating them too. It's great, I think.

8. What do you dislike about your job?

What I don't like about this job is that our personal taste in design **varies**, and normally I'll have to do a thousand edits to get the final product that meets the demand of my boss while still * relating / staying faithful to /remaining true to the initial concept.

* conform means 'to behave according to the usual standards of behaviour that are expected by a group or society' – this does not relate to things like 'concepts'.

9. (Possibly)Do you miss being a student?

Sometimes, when I'm burdened with heavy workloads or the pressure of everyday life, I recall the memories of being a student. We were all carefree and innocent back then. It's a precious time that I **cherish**.

VOCABULARY

theme [n] the main subject of a talk, book, film, etc.
Example: The father-daughter relationship is a recurring **theme** in her novels.

Intriguing [adj] very interesting because of being unusual or mysterious
Example: The Huns are *intriguing* not only because of their notoriously hawkish history, but also because of their place as middlemen between Mongol and Turkic ethnicity

On the basis of [idiom] base on
Example: Discrimination **on the basis of** race, gender, age or disability is not allowed.

Rewarding [adj] giving pleasure, satisfaction
Example: The most **rewarding** aspect of living forever is you have unlimited time to perfect your abilities and accumulate wealth.

Ultimately [adv] at the end of a process, period of time, etc.
Example: Everything will **ultimately** depend on what is said at the meeting with the directors next week.

Perk [n] an advantage or something extra that you are given because of your job
Example: A company car and a mobile phone are some of **the perks** that come with the job.

Conform (to something) [v] obey the rule or reach the necessary stated standard
Example: Before buying the baby's car seat, make sure that it **conforms to** the official safety standards.

Cherish [v] keep hopes, memories in your mind because they are important to you and bring you pleasure
Example: I **cherish** the memories of the time we spent together.



37. HOMETOWN

- What's (the name of) your hometown?
- Is that a big city or a small place?
- How long have you been living there?
- Do you like your hometown?
- Is there anything you dislike about it?
- What do you like(most) about your hometown?
- Do you think you will continue living there for a long time?

1. **What's (the name of) your hometown?**

I'm from Hue, which is a city in central Vietnam. Talking about Hue, people immediately think of the capitals, golden palaces, temples, shrines, and gorgeous dancing stage, **majestic** tombs, and ancient meditative landscapes.

2. **Is that a big city or a small place?**

Well, the city is quite small as compared to the **vast** cities and provinces in my country. Hue city covers just about 70.5 square kilometers, with a total population of **roughly** 360,000 people.

3. **How long have you been living there?**

I have been living there ever since I was born, which is 19 years until now. It is a **relatively** long period of time, so I'm really **attached to** this quiet, tranquil city.

4. **Do you like your hometown?**

(Answer) Yes, absolutely.

(Give a reason for your answer) Hue an area of **outstanding** natural beauty and for me is one of the most beautiful places on earth. It has everything; historical sites, fantastic beaches, rolling mountains, dense forests and **picturesque** countryside, extraordinary cuisine and hospitable people.

5. **Is there anything you dislike about it?**

The sole thing that I dislike about the city is probably the weather. In Hue, it **invariably** rains from September to December, which somehow adds up to the blue atmosphere of the city. Sometimes, when the rain is so heavy and **persistent** the city even floods.

6. **What do you like(most) about your hometown?**

The greatest appeal of Hue city, to my thinking, is its diversity of cuisine, which makes it well-known domestically and even internationally. Hue culinary traditions demand that meals must be presented aesthetically, **harmonizing** food elements, decorations and colors to create a **gastronomic** work of art.

7. **Do you think you will continue living there for a long time?**



(Answer) Actually I'm not quite sure about that.

(Give a reason for your answer) As I'm planning to study abroad, I may have to live far away from my hometown for a certain amount of time. However, if possible, I still want to **settle down** in this beautiful, peaceful city.

Vocabulary:

majestic [adj]: beautiful, powerful, or causing great admiration and respect.
Eg: The majestic Montana scenery will leave you breathless.

vast [adj]: extremely large.
Eg: Navigation across vast stretches of open water was no longer merely as daunting.

roughly [adv]: approximately.
Eg: There has been an increase of roughly 2.25 million.

relatively [adv]: true to a particular degree when compared with other things.
Eg: Sales was relatively low last summer.

(be) attached to [adj]: to like someone or something very much, because you have known them or had them for a long time.
Eg: Regular babysitters can become deeply attached to the children they take care of.

outstanding [adj]: clearly very much better than what is usual.
Eg: Her outstanding performances set a new benchmark for singers throughout the world.

picturesque [adj]: (esp. of a place) attractive in appearance.
Eg: The city is known for its picturesque surroundings and pleasant climate.

invariably [adv]: always (in a negative way).
Eg: High blood pressure is almost invariably accompanied by high blood cholesterol.

persistent [adj]: lasting for a long time or difficult to get rid of.
Eg: Symptoms of the illness include a high temperature and a persistent dry cough.

harmonize [v]: to bring ideas, feelings, or actions into agreement, or to be a pleasing combination of different parts.
Eg: We need to harmonize the different approaches into a unified plan.

gastronomic[adj]: relating to the preparation and consumption (= eating) of good food.
Eg: This dish is a gastronomic delight.

settle down [v]: to start living in a place where you intend to stay for a long time, usually with your partner.
Eg: Hung settled down after his marriage.

38. JEANS

- Do you wear jeans?
- How often do you wear jeans?



- Do you like wearing jeans, why?
- Why do you think jeans are popular?

1. **Do you wear jeans?**

(Answer) Yes, I do.
(Give a reason for your answer) I usually wear jeans made with stretch **fabric**, because I am always chasing comfort and ease of movement. I **can't stand** feeling trapped in my clothes. Always be comfortable so your light can shine.

2. **How often do you wear jeans?**

(Answer) On a daily basis, I guess.
(Give a reason for your answer) I wear jeans with **commitment** and **obsession**. I really give them a workout. I tend to choose a pair that I like, then wear them every single day, until they feel like an extension of my body. I just can't break **the habit of** choosing jeans as my main outfit of the day.

3. **Do you like wearing jeans, why?**

(Answer) Yes, I do love wearing jeans a lot.
(Give a reason for your answer) I wear jeans because they are convenient. They go with everything, and are perfectly **versatile**. I travel often, and I like to pack light, so jeans are a great **staple** for mixing and matching.

4. ***Why do you think jeans are popular?***

(Answer) The reasons are varied.
(Give a reason for your answer) Jeans stand out as a **preferable** option for many people because they are **durable**, both in style and in utility. Besides, they're **neutral,** while also showing allegiance to a classic, functional aesthetic.

Vocabulary:
fabric [n]: cloth or material for making clothes, covering furniture, etc.
Eg: The fibres are woven into fabric.

can't stand + V-ing [expression]: used to say that you do not like someone or something at all, or that you think that something is extremely unpleasant:
Eg: Lily can't stand working in an office.

commitment [n]: a promise or firm decision to do something.
Eg: Players must make a commitment to play for a full season.

obsession [n]: something or someone that you think about all the time.
Eg: He has an obsession with cleanliness.

break the habit of [expression]: to stop doing a routine action or activity.
Eg: I struggled to break the habit of biting my nails, but getting regular manicures helped.

versatile [adj]: able to change easily from one activity to another or able to be used for many different purposes.

Eg: He's a very versatile young actor who's as happy in highbrow dramas as he is in TV comedies.

staple [n]: a main product or part of something.
Eg: Phosphate has been a staple of this area for many years.

preferable [adj]: better or more suitable.
Eg: Surely a diplomatic solution is preferable to war.

durable [adj]: able to last a long time without becoming damaged.

Eg: The machines have to be made of durable materials.

neutral [adj]: having features or characteristics that are not easily noticed.

Eg: wants dark red walls, but I'd like a more neutral colour like cream.

39. CONCENTRATION

- What do you need to be focused?
- What might distract you when you are trying to stay focused?
- What do you do to help you concentrate?
- Is it difficult for you to stay focused on something?

1. **What do you need to be focused?**

(Answer) Well, I think there are certain ways that keep myself always **fixated** on a task**.**

(Give a reason for your answer) I would normally set aside a specific time and place and request to be left alone for a period of time. Another **alternative** for me is to seek out a quiet location where I know I will be able to work undisturbed.

2. **What might distract you when you are trying to stay focused?**

(Answer) Well, there are many things.

(Give a reason for your answer) I sometimes **abandon** a task because I am disturbed by either a noise or sound, or other thoughts creeping into my mind suddenly.

3. **What do you do to help you concentrate?**

(Answer) Whenever my work requires complete concentration, I played the finger gyroscope for about 5 minutes to be mentally well-prepared to undertake the task.

(Give a reason for your answer) All you need to do when playing this toy is holding the spinner in one hand and the other hand spinning rapidly using small continuous strikes with **indefinite** practice. What really amazes me is that it keeps **rotating** for a long time and seems to go on nonstop. All my vision is **captivated** by this little instrument.

4. **Is it difficult for you to stay focused on something?**

(Answer) For a very long period of time, I suffered great **concentration issues** and was not able to focus on one thing for a long period of time.

(Give a reason for your answer) Until now, my focus **capacity has** become sharper as I have been trying different ways to concentrate on my important work. The key here is to **prioritize** and carry out your task in order with absolute **commitment**.

Vocabulary:

fixate [v]: to think about something too much and find it difficult to stop.
Eg: High achievers sometimes fixate on their own flaws.

alternative [n]: an alternative plan or method is one that you can use if you do not want to use another one.
Eg: The opposition parties have so far failed to set out an alternative strategy.

abandon [v]: to leave a place, thing, or person, usually for ever.
Eg: By the time the rebel troops arrived, the village had already been abandoned.

indefinite [adj]: not exact, not clear, or without clear limits.
Eg: The project has been postponed for an indefinite period.

rotate [v]: to turn or cause something to turn in a circle, especially around a fixed point.
Eg: The satellite slowly rotates as it circles the earth.

captivate [v]: to hold the attention of someone by being extremely interesting, exciting, pleasant, or attractive.
Eg: With her beauty and charm, she captivated film audiences everywhere.

concentration issues [expression]: problems related to one's concentration.
Eg: Tiredness and emotional stress can cause concentration issues in most people

capacity [n]: someone's ability to do a particular thing.
Eg: She has a great capacity for hard work.

prioritize [v]: to decide which of a group of things are the most important so that you can deal with them first.
Eg: You must learn to prioritize your work.

commitment [n]: a promise or firm decision to do something.
Eg: Players must make a commitment to play for a full season.

40.VOICE

- Has your voice ever changed?
- Do you enjoy recording your voice and listening to it?
- Do you like your own voice?



- Does your voice sound familiar to your parents?

1. **Has your voice ever changed?**

(Answer) Yes, it actually changes most often when I **come down with** serious flu.
(Give a reason for your answer) When I'm sick with a cold or flu, the acute **laryngitis** leads to my **temporary** hoarseness. I think it causes swelling that alters the way my vocal cords vibrate, making me sound deeper and huskier.

2. **Do you enjoy recording your voice and listening to it?**

(Answer) I guess the answer is no.
(Give a reason for your answer) The tone of my voice is pretty "soft" and "**mature**" when I speak in person. But, when I'm on the phone, the sound of my voice shifts into a **ridiculous** childish tone. I assume that most people in fact don't like their voice when they hear it played back from a recording, because it's not the same voice they hear in their head.

3. **Do you like your own voice?**

(Answer) Well, it's always weird to hear myself recorded, but I don't dislike my voice.
(Give a reason for your answer) It's **comparatively** low and **resonant** for a girl and you can definitely hear me in a room. I have always wanted a higher pitched voice but since many have told me that I have a wonderful pitch, I changed my opinion about it.

4. **Does your voice sound familiar to your parents?**

(Answer) Well, many people told me that my mom and I shared some **similar** traits in terms of voice.

(Give a reason for your answer) I think my voice is the perfect **combination** between that of my mom and dad, and I'm **content** with it.

Vocabulary:

come down with [expression]: to start to suffer from an illness, especially one that is not serious.
Eg: I think I'm coming down with the flu.

laryngitis [n]: a painful swelling of the larynx, usually caused by an infection.
Eg: Carol's flu developed into laryngitis.

temporary [adj]: not lasting or needed for very long.
Eg: The ceasefire will only provide a temporary solution to the crisis.

mature [adj]: mature people behave like adults in a way that shows they are well developed emotionally.
Eg: He's very mature for his age.

ridiculous [adj]: stupid or unreasonable and deserving to be laughed at.
Eg: Most advertisements of this product sound ridiculous.

comparatively [adv]: as compared to something else.

Eg: The test is comparatively easy for most of us.

resonant [adj]: clear and loud, or causing sounds to be clear and loud.
Eg: Huy has a deep, resonant voice.

similar [adj]: looking or being almost, but not exactly, the same.
Eg: My father and I have similar views on politics.

combination [n]: the mixture you get when two or more things are combined.
Eg: A combination of tiredness and boredom caused me to fall asleep.

contented [adj]: happy and satisfied.
Eg: He won't be content until he's upset everyone in the office.

41.WALKING

- Where do you usually take a walk?
- Do you think people will walk more or not in the future?
- Do you walk more often in the past?
- Do you walk a lot?

1. **Where do you usually take a walk?**

(Answer) Well, I don't walk in any **particular** place. I like to walk with my friends to the park so that we can talk and feel less **exhausted** on the way.

2. **Do you think people will walk more or not in the future?**

(Answer) No, I don't think so.

(Give a reason for your answer) Under the pressure of such a fast-paced life, people seem to be increasingly reluctant to have a walk regularly. Modern citizens think that driving is a more **preferable** way of travelling which just **eliminates** the **hurdle** that you may otherwise face if there is no public transportation available or pedestrian roads.

3. **Do you walk more often in the past?**

(Answer) Surprisingly, I walk more often these days than I used to in the past.

(Give a reason for your answer) For a very long period of time, I suffered great **concentration issues** and was not able to focus on one thing for a long period of time. So I took up walking 6 months ago and thanks to this activity, my focus **capacity** became sharper.

4. **Do you walk a lot?**

(Answer) As often as necessary - which mostly means longer distances, but the walking experience is worth it.

(Give a reason for your answer) Otherwise, I try to use my bicycle, even in winter, to remain **in good shape**. I just happen to like biking, as a sport. Also it proves to be **economical** and **environmentally-friendly**.



Vocabulary:

particular [adj]: special, or this and not any other.
Eg: In the light of recent incidents, we are asking our customers to take particular care of their personal belongings.

exhausted [adj]: extremely tired.
Eg: By the time they reached the summit they were exhausted.

preferable [adj]: better or more suitable.
Eg: Surely a diplomatic solution is preferable to war.

eliminate [v]: to remove or take away someone or something.
Eg: Students only have 8 hours of tutorials a week.

hurdle [n]: a frame or fence for jumping over in a race.
Eg: There are still a few technical hurdles to be surmounted before the product can be put on sale to the public.

concentration issues [expression]: problems related to one's concentration.

Eg: Tiredness and emotional stress can cause concentration issues in most people

capacity [n]: someone's ability to do a particular thing.
Eg: She has a great capacity for hard work.

in good shape [expression]: to be prepared and ready to do something.
Eg: All our bags are packed, and we don't have to leave for another hour, so we're in good shape.

economical [adj]: not using a lot of fuel, money, etc.
Eg: There's increasing demand for cars that are more economical on fuel.

Environmentally-friendly [adj]: not harmful to the environment.
Eg: There are a growing number of investors backing firms that are environmentally-friendly.

42. MOVIES

- What is your favourite movie?
- Do your friends like this movie?
- What kinds of movies do you think young people like?
- Do you want to be a movie star?

1. **What is your favourite movie?**

(Answer) Well, I am an **avid** movie fan, and my favourite movie is Parasite, a 2019 South Korean black comedy thriller film directed by Bong Joon-ho.
(Give a reason for your answer) It received widespread critical **acclaim** and won the Palme d'Or at the 2019 Cannes Film Festival, becoming the first Korean film to receive the award.



2. **Do your friends like this movie?**

(Answer) Well, it was actually my close friends who introduced me to this movie, and we watched it together in the cinema right on the day it premiered.
(Give a reason for your answer) We both shared an **immense** love for movies with exotic themes and twisting plots, as these excited our curiosity. As expected, Parasite is generally **gripping** and finely crafted, which left an unforgettable impression on us.

3.What kinds of movies do you think young people like?

(Answer) Well, Action and Comedy are possibly the most popular **genres** of films among youngsters.
(***Explain your reason or reasons***) The young will feel relaxed or **genuinely** interested in these styles of film. I also think that movies which depict real life stories or have an **unpredictable** plot also **capture the attention** of those of a younger age.

4.Do you want to be a movie star?

(Answer) Well, not really.
(Give a reason for your answer) I do not have any **particular** talent for acting, singing, or dancing. Besides, I value privacy, but being an actor means you are constantly surrounded with paparazzi and public attention. I just can't imagine having that kind of life.

Vocabulary:

avid [n]: extremely eager or interested.
Eg: He took an avid interest in the project.

acclaim [n]: public approval and praise.
Eg: Despite the critical acclaim, the novel did not sell well.

premiere [v]: if a show, film, etc. premieres or if it is premiered, the first public performance or showing takes place.
Eg: The play premiered in New York.

immense [adj]: extremely large in size or degree.
Eg: They spent an immense amount of time getting the engine into perfect condition.

gripping [adj]: something that is gripping is so interesting or exciting that it holds your attention completely.
Eg: I found the book so gripping that I couldn't put it down.

genre [n]: a style, especially in the arts, that involves a particular set of characteristics.
Eg: What genre does the book fall into - comedy or tragedy?

genuinely [adv]: really and sincerely.
Eg: I'm genuinely sorry for what I said.

unpredictable [adj]: likely to change suddenly and without reason and therefore not able to be predicted (= expected before it happens) or depended on.



Eg: The weather there can be unpredictable - one minute it's blue skies and the next minute it's pouring rain.

capture one's attention [expression]: to interest someone.
Eg: Most of the textbooks we looked at were too dull to capture students' attention.

particular [adj]: special, or this and not any other.
Eg: In the light of recent incidents, we are asking our customers to take particular care of their personal belongings.

43. LANGUAGES

- Will you learn other languages in the future?
- Do you think it is difficult to learn a new language?
- What language can you speak?
- Why do you learn English?

1. **Will you learn other languages in the future?**

(Answer) Well, my foremost choice would be French.

(Give a reason for your answer) On the one hand, I **am really into** travelling to France because this nation boasts a diverse range of culture like literature, architecture, fashion, and cooking. A good command of French will **equip** me with the necessary languages to interact with its native speakers. Besides, I know a lot of **engaging** French movies so that's quite a **compelling** reason to learn their language.

2. **Do you think it is difficult to learn a new language?**

(Answer) Yes, of course it is. Well, there are different challenges for different people and for different languages.

(Give a reason for your answer) For the language itself, grammar may **baffle** many learners, while others can't pick up pronunciation and struggle to memorize vocabulary. Alphabets can be challenging, especially the **complicated** ones like Kanji or Tibetan. Besides, other **obstacles** like the lack of time and resources generally present themselves during the learning process.

3. **What language can you speak?**

(Answer) I can speak Vietnamese and English and just a bit of Korean.
(Give a reason for your answer) I try to **expose** myself to the language according to my hobbies and interests. Watching movies with subtitles, reading books on my favorite topics or listening to music are of great help to my linguistic command.

4. **Why do you learn English?**

(Answer) There are many reasons to learn English nowadays.

(Give a reason for your answer) I learn English out of academic, **diplomatic**, commercial or other practical considerations because it is the preferred language when communicating with most foreigners. Practically, learning foreign language helps to **broaden** my opportunities for becoming a global citizen.



Vocabulary:

(be) into [adj]: to be interested in something.
Eg: My daughter is into sports all of sudden and really wants to take tennis lessons.

equip [v]: to provide a person or a place with objects that are necessary for a particular purpose.
Eg: All the police officers were equipped with shields to defend themselves against the rioters.

engaging [adj]: pleasant, attractive, and charming.
Eg: He has an engaging manner.

compelling [adj]: If a reason, argument, etc. is compelling, it makes you believe it or accept it because it is so strong.
Eg: It's a fairly compelling argument for going.

baffle [v]: to cause someone to be completely unable to understand or explain something.
Eg: She was completely baffled by his strange behaviour.

complicated [adj]: involving a lot of different parts, in a way that is difficult to understand.
Eg: The rules are rather complicated to follow.

obstacle [n]: something that blocks you so that movement, going forward, or action is prevented or made more difficult.
Eg: The biggest obstacle in our way was a tree trunk in the road.

expose [v]: to create conditions that allow someone to have the opportunity to learn or experience new things.
Eg: Kate was exposed to new ideas when she went to college.

diplomatic [adj]: involving diplomats or the management of the relationships between countries.
Eg: All diplomatic attempts at a peaceful solution to the crisis have been fruitless.

broaden [n]: to increase knowledge, experience.
Eg: Many people agree that travel broadens the mind.

44. FRIENDS

- What do you think makes good friends?
- Do you keep in contact with friends from your childhood?
- What kinds of people do you like to make friends with?
- Do you think you are a good friend to others?

1. **What do you think makes good friends?**

(Answer) Well, there are some specific **attributes** that make good friends.

(Give a reason for your answer) To me, a good friend should be dependable and sincere who is always willing to do stupid things with you and give you a lot of motivation to overcome fierce times. I usually don't **get on well with** over-sensitive or complicated people.

2. **Do you keep in contact with friends from your childhood?**

(Answer) To be honest, I don't stay in touch with a lot of my childhood friends.

(Give a reason for your answer) I'm quite an **introvert** and somehow **prudent** in relationships, so I just talk to one old friend, Phuong Chau, in whom I can **confide**. We have known each other since primary school and maintained this special bond till now.

3. **What kinds of people do you like to make friends with?**

(Answer) I like people who are honest with themselves and others and not **pretentious**. Besides, I'm also attracted to those who share a good **rapport** with everyone but at the same time don't get afraid to **take a stand**, who handle stressful situations with humor, who have self-respect but no ego and are willing to explore the world around them.

4. **Do you think you are a good friend to others?**

(Answer) Well, I hope so.

(Give a reason for your answer) From my perspective, good friends are especially important during times of crisis and **turbulence.** When my friends go through a hard time, they never fail to cheer me up and help sail me through both emotional and academic **setbacks.**

Vocabulary:

attribute [n]: a person that you have met but do not know well.
Eg: He gradually lost contact with all his old acquaintances.

get on (well) with [expression]: to have a pleasant relationship with someone; to be friends with someone.
Eg: I've always gotten on with Amanda—I think she's very nice.

introvert [n]: someone who is shy, quiet, and prefers to spend time alone rather than often being with other people.
Eg: If introverts are easier to socialize, this level will be achieved with less effort and attention than with extraverts.

prudent [adj]: careful and avoiding risks.
Eg: It's always prudent to read a contract carefully before signing it.

confide [v]: to tell something secret or personal to someone who you trust not to tell anyone else.
Eg: As sisters, they have always confided in each other.

pretentious [adj]: trying to appear or sound more important or clever than you are, especially in matters of art and literature.
Eg: John is a pretentious art critic



rapport [n]: a good understanding of someone and an ability to communicate well with them.
Eg: We'd worked together for years and developed a close/good rapport.

take a stand [expression]: to take a position in opposition to someone or something; to oppose or resist someone or something.
Eg: The treasurer took a stand, and others agreed.

turbulence [n]: a state of confusion without any order.
Eg: The era was characterized by political and cultural turbulence.

setback [n]: something that happens that delays or prevents a process from developing.
Eg: There has been a slight/temporary setback in our plans.

45. RUBBISH

- Why do some people throw garbage on the street?
- What do you do with garbage when you are on the street?
- How do you feel when you see people throw garbage on the street?
- Do you think your city is clean or not?

1. Why do some people throw garbage on the street?

Personally, I think the primary reason why people drop litter on the street is because of their ignorance in keeping the street clean. There are even some trash bins but people still throw garbage somewhere else.

2. What do you do with garbage when you are on the street?

Well, I would just pick it up and throw it into a trash bin. It doesn't cost me anything to do that and I can even make an influence on other people to do the same.

3.How do you feel when you see people throw garbage on the street?

To be honest, it really pisses me off to see a person litter the street. If I were that person, I would feel ashamed because of what I did.

4.Do you think your city is clean or not?

Not really. There are some places that are heavily contaminated with chemical waste because of the existence of industrial zones, however; our local authorities are really working on this issue to help make the city clean by raising awareness among citizens and imposing stricter laws.

VOCABULARY:

Ignorance (noun): lack of knowledge or information.
Example: Our ignorance just makes environmental problems worse.

Make an influence (verb): Influence is the power to have an important effect on someone or something. If someone influences someone else, they are changing a person or thing in an indirect but important way.

Example: He hopes to make an influence on people to download the application.

Piss somebody off (phrasal verb): annoy someone.
Example: He never helps with the housework and it's starting to piss me off.

Contaminated (adjective): having been made impure by exposure to or addition of a poisonous or polluting substance.
Example: This area is heavily contaminated with untreated waste so people have to move to another place.

Raise awareness of something (verb): Awareness is the state of knowing something, such as the awareness that the sun comes up every morning.
Example: The campaign aims to raise awareness of protecting the environment.

46. PERFUME

- Do you use perfume?
- What kind of perfume do you like?
- What does perfume mean to you?
- Do you give perfume as a gift?

1. **Do you use perfume?**

(Answer) Yes, I do, but not very often.

(Give a reason for your answer) I try not to wear perfume around people who might have a **sensitivity** to it. I know a few people who get a headache when they're around people wearing fragrances, so if I'm not sure I just don't. But there is no doubt that perfumes can be a woman's best friend at certain times. It is an effective method to **capture** attention or form a good impression.

2. **What kind of perfume do you like?**

(Answer) I am not a perfume enthusiast, so I don't possess many kinds of perfume. I received a bottle from Zara as a gift and I use it **sparingly**, whenever on special occasions. It just makes me feel bold yet airy and comfortable. I can **detect** hints of vanilla and cinnamon and a top note of orange gives this a nice citrusy twist but it is **by no means** a fruity scent.

3. **What does perfume mean to you?**

(Answer) Fragrance or perfume, is **evocative** of an innumerable amount of things; memories, places, people, the list goes on. There's always one particular scent that reminds you of a perfect holiday you took last summer or of your lovely ex-boyfriend. And the same goes for the perfume that makes you feel sexy; your 'going out' perfume and even your 'everyday' perfume will **conjure up** some memories of people and places, and good times.

4. **Do you give perfume as a gift?**

(Answer) Well, not really.

(Give a reason for your answer) I only know some **mainstream** fragrances and I could hardly guess one's tastes, so it's a risky kind of gift most of the time**.** A perfume could be an option as

a gift for our **spouse**, parents or children and eventually siblings or very close friends. It is an **inappropriate** present for a colleague, someone we barely know or someone we have work relationships with.

Vocabulary:

sensitivity [n]: the quality of being easily upset by the things people say or do, or causing people to be upset, embarrassed, or angry: sự nhạy cảm với
Eg: I should have warned you about her sensitivity to criticism.

capture [v]: if something captures your imagination or attention, you feel very interested and excited by it.
Eg: The American drive to land a man on the Moon captured the imagination/attention of the whole world.

sparingly [adv]: in small amounts, or without wasting any.
Eg: There wasn't enough coal during the war, so we had to use it sparingly.

detect [v]: to notice something that is partly hidden or not clear or to discover something.
Eg: Some sounds cannot be detected by the human ear.

by no means [expression]: not at all.
Eg: It is by no means clear what the president can do to end the strike.

evocative [adj]: making you remember or imagine something pleasant.
Eg: On this model, two or more different symbolic systems can be equally expressive and evocative of genuine religious experience.

conjure up [v]: to make a picture or idea appear in someone's mind.
Eg: The glittering ceremony conjured up images of Russia's imperial past.

mainstream [adj]: considered normal, and having or using ideas, beliefs, etc. that are accepted by most people.
Eg: The story was largely ignored by the mainstream press.

spouse [n]: a person's husband or wife.
Eg: In 60 percent of the households surveyed both spouses went out to work.

inappropriate [adj]: unsuitable.
Eg: His casual behavior was wholly inappropriate for such a formal occasion.

47. SOCIAL NETWORK

- How often do you use social networking applications?
- Why do you use social networking applications?
- What are the disadvantages of social networking applications?



- Do you think it is good to make friends online?

1. **How often do you use social networking applications?**

(Answer) **On a daily basis**.
(Give a reason for your answer) Browsing on social networking applications is part of my routine. However, I'm trying to resist the **temptation** to use these applications too frequently, because it takes up quite a large amount of my time.

2. **Why do you use social networking applications?**

(Answer) For several reasons.
(Give a reason for your answer) I find Facebook **particularly** useful because it provides a community space to make announcements and share with others. I also dip in and out of Twitter, LinkedIn and Instagram - usually **in response to** notification alerts. Generally, social networking applications help people **establish** better relationships with their family and friends.

3. **What are the disadvantages of social networking applications?**

(Answer) Obviously, sharing too much information on social platforms can sometimes put you in trouble and there are privacy concerns also. Social media can also lead to **cyberbullying** and lead to serious stress, anxiety and depression in heavy users, especially youngsters. **Excessive** reliance on the Virtual world could **diminish** a person's ability to have a face to face conversation.

4. **Do you think it is good to make friends online?**

(Answer) Well, it depends.
(Give a reason for your answer) While most people feel the need to cement their friendships based on real social interactions, I'm comfortable with talking to people I've met online as long as there's a **mutual** exchange of ideas. However, I would caution those who seek friends online only because they are socially insecure or lonely. Using online platforms as an **avenue** for friendship does not solve your problems and it might just make it worse.

Vocabulary:

on a daily basis [expression]: how often something happens or is done
Eg: Jim goes to school on a daily basis.

temptation [n]: the wish to do or have something that you know you should not do or have.
Eg: As a young actress, she resisted the temptation to move to Hollywood.

particularly [adv]: especially, or more than usual.
Eg: We're particularly interested to hear from people who speak two or more European languages.

in response to [expression]: to reply something.
Eg: The subject has to select the correct word among four alternatives in response to a question.

establish [v]: to start having a relationship with, or communicating with another person, company, country, or organization.
Eg: There is a strong need to establish effective communication links between staff, parents, pupils, and external bodies.



cyber bullying [expression]: cyber bullying is bullying that takes place over digital devices like cell phones, computers, and tablets.
Eg: 68% of teens agree that cyberbullying is a serious problem.

excessive [adj]: too much.
Eg: Excessive exercise can sometimes cause health problems.

diminish [v]: to reduce or be reduced in size, importance, or value.
Eg: Investors can diversify their holdings in order to diminish risk.

mutual [adj]: feeling the same emotion, or doing the same thing to or for each other.
Eg: Theirs was a partnership based on mutual respect, trust and understanding.

avenue [n]: a method or way of doing something.
Eg: China and the United States are exploring avenues of military cooperation.

48. MATH

- Do you think mathematics is important?
- Do you think it is difficult to learn mathematics well?
- Are girls generally good at mathematics?
- Do you often use a calculator?

1. Do you think mathematics is important?

(Answer) Yes, of course it is.
(Give a reason for your answer) Math is incredibly important in our lives and, without realizing it, we use mathematical concepts, as well as the skills we learn from doing math problems, every day. The laws of mathematics **govern** everything around us, and without a good understanding of them, one can **encounter** significant problems in life. It encourages deliberate, creative, and **systematic** thinking.

2.Do you think it is difficult to learn mathematics well?

(Answer) Well, it is to a certain extent.
(Give a reason for your answer) Math is so overwhelming for so many students, including myself. Many children nowadays are reported to struggle to **grasp** math concepts. Math seems quite **problematic** because most people have learned it in a way that is quite **restrictive**, and this is mainly the fault of the school system for teaching math.

3.Are girls generally good at mathematics?

(Answer) From my observations and personal experience, they are not at all.

(Give a reason for your answer) Girls tend to have less positive math attitudes: They have higher levels of math anxiety and lower levels of confidence in their math skills. This means even when girls show similar performance levels to boys, they are often less sure of themselves. In general, boys are better at **analyzing** and thinking critically, thus **outperforming** their female counterparts in scientific subjects, while girls are better at memorizing and learning languages.

4.Do you often use a calculator?
(Answer) Not very often.
(Give a reason for your answer) As I am an adult now, there is little need to solve complicated calculations. However, I sometimes make use of an online calculator to **verify** important calculations, which I find quite **handy** and more reliable.

Vocabulary:

govern [v]: to have a controlling influence on something.
Eg: Prices of goods are governed by the cost of the raw materials, as well as by the cost of production and distribution.

encounter [v]: to experience something, especially something unpleasant.
Eg: The army is reported to be encountering considerable resistance.

systematic [adj]: according to an agreed set of methods or organized plan.
Eg: We've got to be more systematic in the way that we approach this task.

grasp [v]: to understand something, especially something difficult.
Eg: I think I managed to grasp the main points of the lecture.

problematic [adj]: full of problems or difficulties.
Eg: Getting everyone there on time might prove problematic.

restrictive [adj]: limiting the freedom of someone or preventing something from growing.
Eg: The college is not able to expand because of restrictive planning laws

analyze [v]: to study something in a systematic and careful way.
Eg: In the article, several experienced diplomats analyzed the president's foreign policy.

outperform [v]: to do well in a particular job or activity compared to others of a similar type.
Eg: The company has consistently outperformed its rivals this season.

verify [v]: to prove that something exists or is true, or to make certain that something is correct.
Eg: These numbers are surprisingly high and they'll have to be verified.

handy [adj]: useful or convenient.
Eg: We found it handy to have a cellular phone.

49. TRAVELLING

- Do you like to travel?
- Do you often travel by air?
- How long was the longest trip you took?
- Which country would you like to travel to in the future?
- Would you like to travel to space?

1. **Do you like to travel?**



(Answer) Yes, absolutely.

(Explain) Travelling is my top hobby because whenever I travel, I can meet and get to know many new people from different cultures and nations, which helps me to **broaden my horizons.**

2. Do you often travel by air?

(Answer) No, not much.

(Explain) Travelling by air too often is **out of my reach** for a student like me. However, I do travel by air once or twice a year to an ASEAN member because the airfares to these destinations are quite affordable.

3. How long was the longest trip you took?

(Answer) I went on a 9-day trip to Thailand and this was my longest trip ever.
(Extend) I spent 3 days in Bangkok, 2 days in Pattaya and 3 days in Phuket. The remaining one day was allocated for moving.

4. Which country would you like to travel to in the future?

(Answer) Italy is my dream destination **(explain)** as it is **home to** the most stunning churches in the world. Also, I love the Italian culture, language and friendly people whom I've met in Vietnam.

5. Would you like to travel to space?

(Answer) Yes, it sounds a bit weird and scary though.

(Explain) I am curious about how other planets look and how I would be when there is no gravity. This idea really scares me off but as it sounds pretty intriguing, I would like to try travelling to space once.

Vocabulary

To leave for: o reserve or save something for someone or for a later use
Ex: Before **leaving for** Singapore, we had to check if we had all the documents needed at least twice.

To broaden my horizons: expand one's range of interests, activities, and knowledge.
Ex: We should go to other countries, getting to know more people and their cultures to **broaden our horizons**.

Out of someone's reach: not close enough to be touched or picked up by someone
Ex: We should make sure that all the dangerous things are kept **out of children's reach**.

To go on a trip: o travel, to go on a journey, to go on holiday (often quite short)
Ex: We **went on** a long trip to Thailand last summer.

Be home to: to be the abode, domicile, dwelling, dwelling place, habitation, house, pad (slang) residence.
Ex: A rain forest is **home to** a wide range of species of animals and plants.

50. BORROWING/LENDING

- Have you borrowed books from others?
- Have you ever borrowed money from others?
- Do you like lending things to others?
- How do you feel when people don't return **things,** they borrowed from you?

1. **Have you borrowed books from others?**

(Answer) Yes, I sometimes do.
(Give a reason for your answer) I'm an **avid** reader of books and novels, but there are certain books I may not be able to afford. Therefore, I borrow them from my close friends occasionally and afterwards, I treat them to a drink **in return for** their generosity.

2. **Have you ever borrowed money from others?**

(Answer) Yes, I have but quite rarely.
(Give a reason for your answer) I borrowed money from my uncle to study for university, and it turned out alright. I paid him on time and there were never any problems. I paid it off after a few years and we are still close. Having said that, I usually don't **recommend** borrowing money from family members or close friends. I've seen it go badly too many times. When you borrow money from a relative, and miss a payment, things get very **awkward** when they have to come collect.

3. **Do you like lending things to others?**

(Answer) Well, to be honest, the answer is no.
(Give a reason for your answer) Too often the things that you lend don't return, and they very **seldom** return in the same condition, minus ordinary **wear and tear**. In my opinion, unless we have complete trust in someone, we rarely feel ready to lend valuable or too **fragile** items to others.

4. **How do you feel when people don't return things they borrowed from you?**

(Answer) Well, it depends.
(Give a reason for your answer) If that object is too important to be stolen from me, I will **persist** and try to get it back. If I can spare the item or money, I would probably **write it off** and consider it a lesson learned. All of these choices will probably hurt the relationship, which is why I **assume** it's generally best not to borrow from or lend to someone you want to remain friends with.

Vocabulary:

avid [adj]: extremely eager or interested.
Eg: She hadn't seen him for six months and was avid for news.

in return for [expression]: as an exchange for something.
Eg: The farmer offered us food in return for our work.
recommend [v]: to suggest that someone or something would be good or suitable for a particular job or purpose, or to suggest that a particular action should be done.
Eg: I can recommend the chicken in mushroom sauce - it's delicious.

awkward [adj]: difficult to use, do, or deal with.
Eg: Some of the questions were rather awkward.

seldom [adv]: almost never.
Eg: Seldom do we receive any apology when mistakes are made.

wear and tear [expression]: the damage that happens to an object in ordinary use during a period.
Eg: Seat covers on buses take a lot of wear and tear.

fragile [adj]: easily damaged, broken, or harmed.
Eg: Be careful with that vase - it's very fragile.

persist [v]: to try to do or continue doing something in a determined but often unreasonable way.
Eg: If he persists in asking awkward questions, then send him to the boss.

write something off [v]: to decide that a particular person or thing will not be useful, important, or successful.
Eg: A lot of companies seem to write people off if they're over.

assume [v]: to accept something as true without question or proof.
Eg: We can't assume (that) he's innocent simply because he says he is.

51. READING

- Do you like reading?
- What kind of books do you read?
- Do you read electronic books?
- Do you read books related to your profession?

1. Do you like reading?

Definitely. It is one of my hobbies to relieve stress and broaden my knowledge when I have free time.

2. What kind of books do you read?

Well, I'm very into science fiction books, which entertain me a lot, besides giving interesting information.

3. Do you read electronic books?

Not really. I am a big fan of printed books since it provides a less harmful effect on my eyes.



4.Do you read books related to your profession?

Yes, I do. I usually do research about my profession so reading books can help me gain an insight into my field.

VOCABULARY

Relieve stress (verb): chill out.
Example: Going swimming is a good way to relieve stress

Broaden one's knowledge (verb): : to increase the range of one's knowledge, understanding, or experience
Example: I think reading books can help me broaden my knowledge.

Science fiction book: fiction based on imagined future scientific or technological advances and major social or environmental changes, frequently portraying space or time travel and life on other planets.
Example: I am really into science fiction books, which entertain me a lot.

A big fan of something (expression): someone who likes watching or listening to something such as a sport, films, or music very much, or who admires a famous or important person very much
Example: I am a big fan of Adele; I listen to every song of hers.

Printed book: A book is a physical book that has the text, images, etc., printed on paper. ... Many of the conventions of a print book are used in an ebook – for example, cover, title page, copyright page, table of content, chapters, paragraphs, etc.
Example: They are publishing a printed book after many years.

52. SMILE

- Do you like to smile?
- When do people smile at others?
- Do you smile when people take pictures of you?
- Can you recognize a fake smile?

1. **Do you like to smile?**

(Answer) Yes, most people say that I have a cheerful **disposition.**

(Give a reason for your answer) I always remind myself that life isn't simple and it doesn't come without **obstacles**, so smiling keeps you always optimistic. As I see it, people with great smiles **radiate** a warmth that draws others to them instantly.

2. **When do people smile at others?**

(Answer) People smile for different reasons, in various **contexts**.

(Give a reason for your answer) Most often, people of all ages will smile when something is giving them pleasure. Sometimes we do smile simply because we are happy, but we also smile for social reasons and to put people **at ease**, as well as to show more complex emotions, such as **resignation.**



3. **Do you smile when people take pictures of you?**

(Answer) Yes, I actually smile all the time. Smiling in pictures makes me look more **photogenic** and approachable. Besides, I smile to spread happiness. Pictures are clicked to **capture** and relive the moment. And how do we like to do that? In a happy way! So we smile.

4. **Can you recognize a fake smile?**

(Answer) Yes, probably.

(Give a reason for your answer) When you smile genuinely, there are two kinds of muscles involved in your face. A **spontaneous** smile of joy has upward and widening movement of the mouth into a broad grin, and movement of the muscle around the eyes. A fake or social smile, controlled by the motor cortex, has only the upward movement of the mouth, it is slower and less **symmetric**.

Vocabulary:

disposition [n]: the particular type of character that a person naturally has.
Eg: She is of a nervous/cheerful/sunny disposition.

obstacle [n]: something that blocks you so that movement, going forward, or action is prevented or made more difficult.
Eg: The biggest obstacle in our way was a tree trunk in the road.

radiate [v]: to express strongly an emotion or quality, or (of an emotion or quality) to be expressed strongly by someone.
Eg: He simply radiates integrity.

context [n]: the situation within which something exists or happens, and that can help explain it.

Eg: It is important to see all the fighting and bloodshed in his plays in historical context.
at ease [expression]: relaxed.
Eg: She soon put/set me at ease (= made me relaxed).

resignation [n]: a sad feeling of accepting something that you do not like because you cannot easily change it.
Eg: She received the disappointing news with resignation.

photogenic [adj]: having a face that looks attractive in photographs.
Eg: It is the photogenic young man or woman who becomes a political leader— and perhaps we are all the better for that.

capture [v]: if something captures your imagination or attention, you feel very interested and excited by it.
Eg: The American drive to land a man on the Moon captured the imagination/attention of the whole world.

spontaneous [adj]: happening or done in a natural, often sudden way, without any planning or without being forced.
Eg: His jokes seemed spontaneous, but were in fact carefully prepared beforehand.



symmetric [adj]: having similarity in size, shape, and relative position of corresponding parts.
Eg: The structure is completely symmetric

53. PLAN

- Do you make plans every day?
- Are you good at managing your time?
- What is the latest plan you made?
- What is the hardest part about making a plan?

1. ***Do you make plans every day?***

(Answer) Yes, I do, for many reasons.

(Give a reason for your answer) I always carry a small notebook which I plan my daily schedule with, plans and notes. It sounds quite conventional but it works for me. Writing stuff down helps me remember tasks better than typing on some kind of **productive** app. I spend about 5 minutes at the beginning and end of every day to plan that day and the next day's tasks. The important thing is you need to keep your to-do list small, it's about **prioritizing**.

2. ***Are you good at managing your time?***

(Answer) Objectively speaking, I am quite good at it.

(Give a reason for your answer) I think once you are **in the habit of** controlling yourself according to your time table, life becomes very easy. Good time management will help you with various other skills and competencies that graduate employers seek, from **perseverance,** resilience, reliability and **coping with** stress to problem solving and teamwork.

3. ***What is the latest plan you made?***

(Answer) Well, I've recently planned to travel across the country before the age of 30. I want to visit different places as much as possible to gain **first-hand** knowledge and experience. Travelling **fascinates** me more than anything else. In reality, it would be quite challenging for me to fulfil the plan, but I will try my best to organize everything even if it takes several years for me.

4. ***What is the hardest part about making a plan?***

(Answer) Well, there are a lot of considerations when preparing for a plan, but I think it is establishing goals.
(Give an example (often a personal example)) Establishing clear, **concise** and understandable goals — is extremely necessary. When people can't see the vision of the plan, they won't take action to pursue the plan. Clear **objectives** should be come up with, whereas teammates or members should also be gathered and **delegated** tasks appropriately, if needed.

Vocabulary:

productive [adj]: resulting in or providing a large amount or supply of something.
Eg: He had an amazingly productive five years in which he managed to write four novels.

prioritize [v]: to decide which of a group of things are the most important so that you can deal with them first.
Eg: You must learn to prioritize your work.

in the habit of [expression]: if you are in the habit of doing something, you do it regularly or often.
Eg: They were in the habit of giving two or three dinner parties a month.

perseverance [n]: continued effort and determination.
Eg: Through hard work and perseverance, he worked his way up to the top.

cope with [v]: deal with.
Eg: It must be really hard to cope with three young children and a job.

first-hand [adj]: obtained personally, or directly from someone who is personally involved in something.
Eg: He has firsthand experience of what war is like.

fascinate [v]: to interest someone a lot.
Eg: Anything to do with planes and flying fascinates him.

concise [adj]: expressing what needs to be said without unnecessary words; short and clear.
Eg: She wrote up a concise summary of the day's events.

objective [n]: something that you plan to do or achieve.
Eg: Can the sales team achieve/meet its financial objectives?

delegate [v]: to give a particular job, duty, right, etc. to someone else so that they do it for you.
Eg: Authority to make financial decisions has been delegated to a special committee.

54. VISIT RELATIVES

- Do you often visit your relatives?
- What do you do when visiting relatives?
- When was the last time you visited a relative?
- Why do people visit relatives?

1. ***Do you often visit your relatives?***

(Answer) Yes, I do.
(Give a reason for your answer) I like many of my relatives who are very **compassionate,** lovely and friendly to me and among them I would pick my younger uncle as the best relative in terms of our mutual understanding, **closeness** and communications.

2. ***What do you do when visiting relatives?***

(Answer) There are a lot of activities.

(Give a reason for your answer) We often discuss our family issues, our thoughts on **politics**, religion, books writers, movies, music and on many other issues. In our big family, we share our books and recommend books to each other. Generally, adults also share **heartfelt** words to youngsters and advise them on how to behave **decently.**

3. When was the last time you visited a relative?

(Answer) Well, it was just last week when I visited my uncle's family and my grandparents, who **reside** with him in the countryside. We went for a short walk near the field after breakfast to relax in nature and **soak up** some much-needed Vitamin D, which is **necessary** for elderly people.

4. Why do people visit relatives?

(Answer) For many reasons, I believe.
(Give a reason for your answer) Simply hanging out with family that you don't see all the time is great. You get a chance to catch up with everyone and figure out what they're doing with their lives. You also get to laugh and just be weird because they don't judge you for your **weirdness**. Above all, the memories are the best when you're with your family sitting around and **reminiscing about** things that you've done together.

Vocabulary:

compassionate [adj]: showing compassion.
Eg: The public's response to the crisis appeal was generous and compassionate.

closeness [n]: the quality of knowing someone very well, liking them a lot, and wanting to spend a lot of time together.
Eg: A special closeness is supposed to exist between twins.

politics [n]: the activities of the government, members of law-making organizations, or people who try to influence the way a country is governed.
Eg: After 30 years in politics, our local member of parliament is retiring next year.

heartfelt [adj]: strongly felt and sincere.
Eg: Please accept my heartfelt apologies/thanks.

decently [adv]: in a way that is socially acceptable or good.
Eg: She admitted that she hadn't always behaved decently.

reside [v]: to live, have your home, or stay in a place.
Eg: The family now resides in southern France.

soak up [v]: to enjoy the effects or experience of something as much as possible.
Eg: I love to lie on the beach and soak up the sun.

necessary [adj]: needed in order to do something.
Eg: The police are prepared to use force, if necessary.



weirdness [n]: the quality of being strange and unusual.
Eg: It's a comedy which often succeeds in capturing the weirdness of real life.

reminisce [v]: to talk or write about past experiences that you remember with pleasure.
Eg: Grandpa likes to reminisce about his years in the navy.

55. STREET MARKET

- Do you currently live in a house or a flat/ apartment?
- Are street markets common in your country?
- What is usually sold there?
- Do you think people like street markets? Why?

1. Do you currently live in a house or a flat/ apartment?
Answer: I'm living in an apartment that is fully furnished and has all the mod cons. I share my bedroom with another person, and we have been living there for over one year.

2. Are street markets common in your country?
Answer: Yes. They exist everywhere, and Vietnamese people go to street markets daily.

3. What is usually sold there?
Answer: Well, you can find trendy clothes at a reasonable price in any street market in Vietnam.

4. Do you think people like street markets? Why?
Answer: I think people enjoy street markets since they are ideal places to let off steam and bargain with sellers to get a discount.

VOCABULARY:

Fully-furnished (adj): A fully-furnished apartment is one which is equipped with all required items of a household.
Eg: The flat is fully-furnished, therefore, we don't have to buy anything.

All the mod cons (n): The amenities and appliances characteristic of a well-equipped modern house that contribute to an easier and more comfortable way of life.
Eg: Don't worry! Our house has all the mod cons, which is very convenient.

On a daily basis (adj): how often something happens or is done
Eg: You should do exercise on a daily basis in order to improve your physical health.

Let off steam (v): To do or say something that helps you to get rid of strong feelings or energy
Eg: We should go for a drink tonight to let off some steam.

Bargain (v): negotiate the terms and conditions of a transaction.
Eg: Bargain hard when you go to Ben Thanh Market; otherwise you may get ripped off.

56. OUTDOOR ACTIVITIES

- Do you like outdoor activities?



- What outdoor activities do you (most) like to do?
- What outdoor sports do you like? (Why?)
- How much time do you spend outdoors every week?
- Do Vietnamese people go out a lot?
- What (types of) outdoor activities are popular in your country?
- How and where do people in your country usually socialize?

1. Do you like outdoor activities?
Definitely! I think outdoor activities do wonders for our mental and physical health. So, I often spend my leisure time playing sports or taking a walk around the park.

2. What outdoor activities do you (most) like to do?
Well, I enjoy lots of activities like hiking, camping or skateboarding, but I'm particularly keen on cycling, especially in the open countryside. It's fun, relaxing and easy to do, you know. More than that, biking helps me get energized and ward off feelings of exhaustion.

3. What outdoor sports do you like? (Why?)
I'm really into playing badminton. It's quite popular in my country, so I can play it with my friends, family members, or next-door neighbours and strengthen the bond with them. Moreover, badminton develops my quick reflexes as well, so I do think it's a fantastic sport.

4. How much time do you spend outdoors every week?
On average, I guess that I do some outdoor activity 2 or 3 times a week. I normally spend at least one morning per week cycling and take part in some sports or other outdoor activities when I'm free. It's not so frequent, I know, which is due to my busy schedule, but I always try to arrange as much time as possible for some outdoor exercise.

5. Do Vietnamese people go out a lot?
It's kind of hard to say, but people around me tend to spend more time indoors. They're living a fast-paced lifestyle with most of their time devoted to working, commuting and connecting on social media, so, doing things outdoors doesn't seem to be a regular or important part of their calendar.

6. What (types of) outdoor activities are popular in your country?
Well, probably jogging and yoga. I'm not sure about this, but in my country, you can easily catch sight of groups of people from all walks of life jogging or doing yoga in the parks every morning or in the evening. So, these may be the most popular outdoor activities, I guess.

7. How and where do people in your country usually socialize?
People in my country nowadays tend to socialize at work or school. Besides, people of my age often meet up and chat in coffee shops or restaurants which are popular and often beautifully designed. At the same time, the older people usually get together in the parks or gather at someone's home to cook and exchange pleasantries.

Vocabulary

Do wonders (for somebody/something): [expression] have a beneficial effect
Example: Fresh air and exercise do wonders for your health.

Be keen on (expression): liking something/somebody very much; be very interested in something

Ex: He's mad keen on planes – he has a huge collection of photos of aircraft.

The open countryside (expression): far from cities or many houses or other buildings
Ex: I love to walk in the open countryside, through the fields and over the mountains.

Energized (adjective): feel full of energy or enthusiasm
Example: Doing some morning yoga is a natural way to get more energized.

ward off (phrasal verb): to protect yourself against danger or illness
Example: She often carries a bit of fresh ginger to ward off headache.

Be into something (expression): to be interested in something in an active way.
Ex: He's into surfing in a big way – he goes to the beach every weekend.

Strengthen the bond (expression): to make a connection stronger between people or things
Ex: The peace treaty strengthened the bond of friendship between the governments of the two countries.

reflex (noun): a person's ability to respond to new or changing stimuli.

Example: A sportsperson must have quick reflexes, especially in sports such as tennis or football.

Schedule (noun): a plan of all the things that you have to do
Ex: My schedule today includes lunch with the company director and a meeting with a client in the afternoon.

Fast-paced (adjective): happening very quickly
Example: It's a myth that all older people struggle with the fast-paced evolution of technology.

Catch sight of (expression): see something for only a moment
Example: I caught sight of someone with red hair and I knew it was you.

Socialize (verb): to meet and spend time with people in a friendly way, in order to enjoy yourself
Ex: At university, I enjoyed socializing with other students.

57. WEATHER

- What kind of weather is typical in your hometown?
- What's your favourite season?
- What kind of weather do you like most? Do you prefer dry or wet weather?

1. What kind of weather is typical in your hometown?
Since my country is located near the Equator, Ho Chi Minh City, where I live, usually has hot weather, which is not my cup of tea.

2. What's your favourite season?
If I had to choose, I would choose winter because the weather gets much warmer, and I can wear fashionable clothes that are only suitable for this season.



3. What kind of weather do you like most? Do you prefer dry or wet weather?
I like sunny weather, but not when it's too hot because it gets a bit humid after a while. I'll go for dry weather since I don't want to get caught up in a rainstorm and soaked to the bone.

VOCABULARY:

Boiling weather (expression): extremely hot (having a high temperature: of an object, the weather, a living creature)
Ex: Don't go to the North in summer! It's boiling weather.

Humid (adjective): marked by a relatively high level of water vapour in the atmosphere.
Ex: The weather is really humid; you should drink a lot of water.

Get caught up in a rain (Idiom): To "get caught" in the rain means that you are outside and it starts raining suddenly, before you can get inside or get an umbrella.
Ex: It suddenly rained and I got caught up in the rain.

58. PATIENCE

- What do you think "patience" is?
- Do you think patience is important?
- (Possibly) Do you think being patient is an important part of being polite?
- Would you say you are a patient person?
- Have you ever lost your patience?
- What do you become impatient about?

1. What do you think "patience" is?
Well, I suppose "patience" indicates a person's capacity to wait or to endure delay or something **tedious** or annoying without complaining and getting **riled** about it.

2. Do you think patience is important?
Yes, being patient is vital because it is helpful in many situations. Being impatient does not solve the problems but causes more trouble. Also, individual people tend to like patient people because they usually have calm attitudes and an **easy-going** personality.

3.(Possibly) Do you think being patient is an important part of being polite?
Of course, being patient shows your respectful and thoughtful attitudes to others. For example, at the coffee shop, people have to queue in line and wait patiently for their turn.

4. Would you say you are a patient person?
Generally, I'm an impatient person because I hate waiting for other people. I can easily **get annoyed** if my friends do not **turn up** on time. However, in certain situations, I can remain patient, like studying English every day without feeling bored.

5. Have you ever lost your patience?
Yes, I have. Last week, I planned to **hang out with** my friend at the KFC restaurant. But my friend didn't come, and she made me wait for more than thirty minutes. I called her, and she didn't even respond to it. Being tired of waiting for so long, I just left her a message **reproaching** her and saying that she did not need to come any more. I was so angry that I did not talk to her for a few days.

6. What do you become impatient about?
As I mentioned previously, I **loathe** waiting for individuals or something taking up too much time. It usually makes me feel upset and **irritated**.

Vocabulary:

tedious (adjective) boring
Ex: The problem is I find most forms of exercise so ***tedious***.

get riled (expression) to get very annoyed
Ex: I ***got riled*** when the shop assistant was rude to me.

easy-going (adjective) relaxed and happy to accept things without worrying
Ex: She won't get angry if you're late, she's very ***easy-going.***

respectful (adjective) showing politeness or honour to someone or something
Ex: There was a ***respectful*** two-minute silence as we remembered the soldiers who had died in the war.

thoughtful (adjective) carefully considering things
Ex: He has a ***thoughtful*** approach to his work, planning everything well.

queue (verb) to wait in a line of people, often to buy something
Ex: Dozens of people were ***queuing*** up to get tickets.

get annoyed (verb phrase): become angry
Ex: He ***got annoyed*** at the way she tried to take over the whole meeting.
turn up (phrasal verb): to arrive
Ex: We arranged to meet at midday, but he didn't ***turn up.***

loathe (verb) hate somebody or something very much
Ex: From an early age the brothers have ***loathed*** each other.

hang out with somebody (expression) spend time with somebody
Ex: When I have free time, I ***hang out with*** friends and we listen to music or chat.

reproach (verb) to criticize someone, especially for not being successful or not doing what is expected
Ex: His mother ***reproached*** him for not eating all his dinner.

irritated (adjective) annoyed
Ex: I began to get increasingly ***irritated*** at her foolish questions

59. ANIMAL

- Have you ever kept pets?
- Do you like to go to the zoo?
- Have you ever seen any wild animals before?
- What wild animal do you like the most?



1. ***Have you ever kept pets?***

(Answer) Yes, I used to have one.

(Give a reason for your answer) My father got a dog for me when I was 5. Yet, I remember he was so **aggressive** that we rarely played with him. He was kept only for guarding the house. Later on, when he started recognizing us, he allowed us to **approach** him. I remember my sister felt **attached to** him a great deal, so when he died, it was a true shock for her.

2. ***Do you like to go to the zoo?***

(Answer) I don't particularly appreciate going to the zoo.
(Give a reason for your answer) It is so sad to see the **miserable** animals sitting, running about sadly in their cage, hoping for some scraps from the visitors. They don't **deserve** it. But on the other side, some of them will live in danger if they are allowed to live in their natural environment.

3. Have you ever seen any wild animals before?

(Answer) Not even once in person but of course plenty of times on TV through National Geographic TV shows.
(Give a reason for your answer) In my twenty years of existence, I still haven't seen one real wild animal before **with my naked eyes**. Some of the amazing wild animals that I've seen on television are zebras, gorillas, giraffes, **coyotes**, hedgehogs, otters, and lions. I don't get a chance to visit any zoos in this country.

4. What wild animal do you like the most?

(Answer) I do not have any **particular** kinds of wild animals that I like.

(Give a reason for your answer) If I have to pick one, I prefer to choose elephants. They look different from any other animal you've ever seen, they have a trunk, tusks and they're **massive** in size. They are closely related to the extinct mammoth, and that is why elephants are so unique. Besides, **in comparison with** other kinds of animals, they are much more intelligent.

Vocabulary:
aggressive [adj]: behaving in an angry and violent way towards another person.
Eg: If I criticize him, he gets aggressive and starts shouting.

approach [v]: to come nearer to something or someone.
Eg: Under no circumstances should you approach the man.

(be) attached to [adj]: to like someone or something very much.
Eg: Steve really gets attached to his cats.

miserable [adj]: very unhappy.
Eg: She's miserable living on her own.

deserve [v]: to have earned or to be given something because of the way you have behaved or the qualities you have.
Eg: After all that hard work, you deserve a holiday.

with the naked eyes [expression]: without using any special device for making images larger.
Eg: We live miles away, but on a clear night, you can see the city skyscrapers with the naked eye.

coyote [n]: a small wild animal like a dog that lives in North America.
Eg: Chickens need protection from predators such as coyotes, foxes, and owls.

particular [adj]: special, or this and not any other.
Eg: In the light of recent incidents, we are asking our customers to take particular care of their personal belongings.

massive [adj]: very large in size, amount, or number.
Eg: If the drought continues, deaths will occur on a massive scale.

in comparison with [expression]: when compared with something.
Eg: The paintings he made later pale in comparison with his earlier work.

60. TEA OR COFFEE

- Do Vietnamese people like to drink tea or coffee?
- Do you prepare tea or coffee for the guests at home?
- When was the last time you drank tea or coffee?

1. ***Do Vietnamese people like to drink tea or coffee?***

(Answer) Well, both are Vietnamese people's favourite drink, but I think tea is more **preferred.** ***(Give a reason for your answer)*** In Vietnam, tea is said to appear in almost every social activity: from the wedding, birthday to anniversary and **ritual** ceremonies. A cup of hot tea in the early morning after breakfast, some iced tea at small stalls while waiting for a friend, or a whole day chilling out in a teahouse; that is the way tea **penetrates** Vietnamese' daily life.

2. Do you prepare tea or coffee for the guests at home?
(Answer) When it comes to treating my guests, I want them to experience a sense of warmth and **delight**, so I most often choose tea. Tea and biscuits is the perfect combination for many people, especially children. If I serve my guests a cup of coffee, this may somehow **disturb** their sleep at night.

3. When was the last time you drank tea or coffee?
(Answer) Well, I drink coffee frequently **for the sake of** my hectic schedule. ***(Give a reason for your answer)*** Yesterday, I made myself a cup of coffee to prepare for the demanding working deadline. Honestly, I want to **break the habit of** overusing coffee, but given my **demanding** workload, that prospect seems **out of the question**, at least at the moment. It turns out that early morning coffee drinkers should also consider adjusting their schedule to optimize their caffeine intake better. The best times to drink coffee — or caffeine in general — is between 10 a.m. and noon, and between 2 p.m. and 5 p.m.

Vocabulary:

preferable [adj]: better or more suitable.
Eg: Surely a diplomatic solution is preferable to war.

ritual [n]: a ritual is also any act done regularly, usually without thinking about it.
Eg: My morning ritual includes reading the newspaper while I drink my coffee.

penetrate [v]: to move into or through something.
Eg: In a normal winter, the frost penetrates deeply enough to kill off insect eggs in the soil.

delight [n]: (something or someone that gives) great pleasure, satisfaction, or happiness.
Eg: I read your letter with great delight.

disturb [v]: to interrupt what someone is doing.
Eg: I'm sorry to disturb you so late, but my car's broken down and I don't have my phone with me.

for the sake of [expression]: in order to help or bring advantage to someone.
Eg: Their parents only stayed together for the sake of the children.

break the habit of [expression]: to stop doing a routine action or activity.
Eg: I struggled to break the habit of biting my nails, but getting regular manicures helped.

demanding [adj]: needing a lot of time, attention, or energy.
Eg: She's hoping to find a job which is more demanding intellectually.

out of the question [expression]: not possible; having no chance; not permitted.
Eg: I'm sorry, but your taking my car is out of the question.

optimize [v]: to make something as good as possible.
Eg: We need to optimize our use of the existing technology.

61. SLEEP

- How long should people sleep for the benefit of their health? Why?
- Do you think that the old should sleep more than the young? Why?
- What do you do to improve sleeping quality?
- Do you think it's effective?

1. How long should people sleep for the benefit of their health? Why?
(Answer) I'm not too sure, but according to what I have read, around 8 hours of sleep per day would be **optimal**. **(Give reasons for your answer)** This is said to be the perfect amount of time for people to **rejuvenate** and recharge their minds and bodies. If people constantly sleep a lot more than this recommended amount of time, they are likely **to be prone to obesity**, which carries **serious health risks**.

2. Do you think that the old should sleep more than the young? Why?
(Answer) No, I don't think that should be the case. **(Give reasons for your answer)** I believe that the amount of time people spend resting should correlate with how much they **exert themselves** during the day. Usually, young people spend more of their energy on physical activities, so it's more reasonable for the young to sleep more than the elderly.



3. What do you do to improve sleeping quality?
(Answer) Several measures can be taken to assure a quality sleep. **(Give a reason for your answer)** First, I make sure that I **work out at the gym** or **take gentle exercise** as I usually find myself drifting to sleep faster and **sleep more soundly** after I **have taken regular exercise** during the daytime. Also, I find that some **soothing** music and comfy pillows are helpful in ensuring a good night's sleep.

4. Do you think it's effective?
(Answer) Yes, from my personal experience, the solutions I mentioned have proved to be quite effective. **(Give reasons for your answer)** When I'm **drained** after a long day, or I've done a hardcore work-out at the fitness centre, I am often sore all over and **crave for** some rest. Then, nothing is more satisfying than to **crash out** at night, falling asleep while listening to slow and relaxing melodies.

Vocabulary

to be prone to obesity (expression)
Meaning: to be likely to become fat in an unhealthy way

Example: Children who are addicted to watching television, instead of playing outdoor games, **are more prone to obesity**.

to carry health risks (expression)

Meaning: to have effects which could be bad for one's health

Example: Smoking and drinking alcohol are potentially dangerous habits, because they **carry serious health risks**.
to take regular exercise (expression)

Meaning: to do some physical activity on a regular basis

Example: Authorities should encourage people of all ages **to take regular exercise** by providing facilities in each community.

Sports and exercise

to exert oneself (reflexive verb)
Meaning: to make a big physical effort to do something

Example: I believe that sports professionals deserve high salaries, because constant hard training is necessary so that they can **exert themselves** to the limit when they compete.
to work out at the gym (expression)

Meaning: to train the body by physical exercise at the gym

Example: As part of a healthy lifestyle, people of all ages should **work out at the gym** on a regular basis.
to take gentle exercise (expression)

Meaning: to do exercise which is not physically demanding or tiring

Example: Even the elderly can keep fit by **taking gentle exercise**, like jogging or even a walk in the park.

Other vocabulary:

optimal [adjective]
Meaning: best; most likely to bring success or advantage
Example: The **optimal** temperature for the development of larvae is in the range 18–26˚C.

to rejuvenate [verb]
Meaning: to make somebody/something look or feel younger, more lively or more modern
Example: Special creams can be used to **rejuvenate** the skin.

to sleep soundly
Meaning: if you sleep soundly, you sleep very well and very deeply
Example: The baby **was sleeping soundly** after listening to his mother's lullaby.

soothing [adjective]
Meaning: making somebody who is anxious, upset, etc. feel calmer/ making a tense or painful part of your body feel more comfortable
Example: The **soothing** voice of the singer made everyone in the audience feel relaxed.

drained [adjective]
Meaning: very tired and without energy
Example: The death of her father left her **emotionally drained.**

crave for something [phrasal verb]
Meaning: to have a very strong desire for something
Example: Pregnant women can occasionally **crave for** weird food.

to crash out [phrasal verb]
Meaning: to throw yourself down to sleep in an exhausted state
Example: After the late-night party at my house, several of my friends **crashed out** on the floor.

62.SKY

- Do you like to watch the sky?
- What is the sky like at night in your hometown?
- Do you like to watch stars?
- Have you ever taken a course about stars?
- What's your favourite star?

1. Do you like to watch the sky?
(Answer) Yes, I have to say I am a fan of watching the sky.
(Give a reason for your answer) To me, the sky is a magnificent **work of art**, and I appreciate **the aesthetic qualities of** it. The colour of the clouds are so beautiful.

2. What is the sky like at night in your hometown?
(Answer) The night sky where I live is simply **a breathtaking view**.
(Give a reason for your answer) As I live in the countryside, the sky is not affected by light pollution, so there are numerous shining stars in a broad blackish background. Therefore, the view is perfect for anyone who **has a thirst for** freedom.



3. Do you like to watch stars?
(Answer) I find star-watching extremely interesting.
(Give a reason for your answer) I believe that every star in **the cosmos** has its function and holds a unique mystery to be discovered. This **is a great inspiration to me**.

4. Have you ever taken a course about stars?
(Answer) I haven't ever enrolled in such courses, but I would love to in the future. **(Give a reason for your answer)** I have always wanted to know how constellations retain their shape in **zero gravity** without **floating through space.**

5. What's your favourite star?
(Answer) The Sun is my favourite star, I would say.
(Give a reason for your answer) This is because of its power and importance to life. If we could find a star similar to the Sun out there in space, we would be able to discover **alien life forms** and complete our **quest for a new homeland**.

Vocabulary

Arts: a work of art/a work of music/a work of literature (expression): a painting, sculpture, book, play, piece of music etc

Example: Shakespeare's plays are considered as one of the greatest **works of literature** in the English language.

the aesthetic qualities of something (expression): The qualities related to beauty and understanding the beauty of something.

Example: One advantage of studying the arts is that students learn to appreciate **the aesthetic qualities of** paintings, literature and music.

Tourism:

a breathtaking view (expression): an extremely beautiful view
Example: From the top of the mountain, there is **a breathtaking view of** the coast.

to have a thirst for something (expression): to have a strong desire for something
Example: He has been all over the world, but he still **has a thirst for** seeing new places and enjoying new experiences.

Space Exploration:
The cosmos (noun): the universe, especially when it is thought of as an ordered system
Example: Although the challenge of exploring and understanding **the cosmos** is exciting, it is also very expensive

To be an inspiration to (expression): to make somebody excited about something, especially thinking of the future
Example: The images of the first men on the moon **were an inspiration to** people, and made them more hopeful about the future.

Zero gravity (expression): having no force to pull objects to the ground, so that they float.
Example: Living in conditions of **zero gravity** in space must be extremely tiring and uncomfortable.

To float through space (expression): to move slowly in the air
Example: Space tourism would be really boring, simply **floating through space** and looking out of the window of the spacecraft.

Alien life forms (expression): creatures from another world
Example: One of the most exciting possibilities of the space program is finding alien life forms on other planets.

The quest for a new homeland (expression): the search for a new place to inhabit
Example: As humans are destroying their own planet, **the quest for a new homeland** in the universe is essential.

63. SHARING

- Have you had anything to share with others recently?
- Did your parents teach you to share when you were a child?
- What kind of things do you like to share with others?
- What kind of things are not suitable for sharing?

1. Have you had anything to share with others recently?
Yes. I was quite nervous about my upcoming finals. Therefore, I went to see my sister and tell her my concerns. She gave me a pep talk.

2. Did your parents teach you to share when you were a child?
They did encourage my siblings and me to speak our minds if we needed to. My parents told me that sharing could lift people's spirits and get rid of negative energy.

3. What kind of things do you like to share with others?
I usually talk with my friends about how I spend my day. Sometimes I even share food with my colleagues because I often buy snacks at the workplace.
4. What kind of things are not suitable for sharing?
I think people should keep personal information to themselves because anyone can take advantage of that information and put us into trouble.

.

VOCABULARY:

Pep talk (noun): a talk intended to make someone feel more courageous or enthusiastic.
Example: The coach came and gave a pep talk to his team.

Speak one's mind: Say what one really thinks, talk freely and fearlessly
Example: Everyone feels free to speak their mind in this section.

Lift one's spirit: To make one feel happier or more carefree
Example: My advice really lifted his spirits.

Get rid of: take action so as to be free of (a troublesome or unwanted person or thing)
Example: You should get rid of these clothes since they are old-fashioned.

Keep something to oneself: refuse to disclose or share something.
Example: Keep your information to yourself! Don't tell anyone about this

Take advantage of: exploit for one's own benefit.
Example: You should take advantage of your time to travel more.

64. HANDWRITING

- Do you often write things?
- Do you prefer to write by hand or write using a computer?
- Do you think computers might one day replace handwriting?
- When do children begin to write in your country?

1. Do you often write things?
(Answer) Absolutely yes.
(Explain) Writing is one of the things that I love doing in my leisure time. I practice writing every day to **sharpen my language and writing skills**, as well as relieve stress after a hard-working day.

2. Do you prefer to write by hand or write using a computer?
(Answer) It depends.
(explain) When writing about everyday things or practising for the IELTS test, I'd rather write by hand. I use a computer to write academic reports.

3. Do you think computers might one day replace handwriting?
(Answer) I don't think so.
(Explain) The computer has indeed been doing a good job in helping people to write. However, I don't think that it will replace the traditional way of writing as there will be no computers to **rely on** in urgent cases.

4. When do children begin to write in your country?
(Answer) Vietnamese kids start learning to write at the age of around 5 to 6, ***(explain)*** which is considered quite early by some European experts. But Vietnamese kids know how to do it well.

Vocabulary:

To sharpen a skill: perfect a skill.
Eg: To sharpen my communication skills, I participate in a lot of extra-curricular activities.

To rely on: to need (someone or something) for support, help, etc. : to depend on (someone or something)
Eg: I don't think we should always rely on theories in books because there are many unexpected situations which cannot be solved by them in real life.

65. PHOTOS/PICTURES

- How do you keep your photos?
- In what situations do you take photos?
- How often do you take photos?
- Do you prefer to take photos of yourself or to have other people take photos?

1. How do you keep your photos?
Well, I usually store my photos by printing them out and making an album if the pictures are important. If not, I keep them on my iPhone.

2. In what situations do you take photos?
I snap a photo whenever I see something that catches my eye when I'm in a good mood. Normally, I take pictures with my friends when we hang out or when my family goes to a fancy restaurant.

3. How often do you take photos?
Not too often, I have to say. I'm an introvert who doesn't like to share too many photos, so I only take photos when I find something interesting.

4. Do you prefer to take photos of yourself or to have other people take photos?
I'm pretty good at photography, so I choose to take photos by myself. Also, it is more comfortable to see my expression, which is unflattering sometimes.

VOCABULARY:

Snap a photo (phrase): Take a photo
Ex: He snapped a photo of me while I was sleeping.

Catch one's eyes (phrase):: to get someone's attention, especially by looking at them
Eg: This costume really catches my eyes.

In a good mood (expression): Refers to a cheerful, well-disposed state of mind,
Ex: Dinner is on me! I'm in a good mood today.

66. MUSIC

- Do you like listening to music?
- When do you listen to music?
- Did you learn instruments?
- Did you have any music classes in school?
- Do you think children must have music classes?
- What do you think of Vietnamese traditional music?
- How much time do you spend listening to music every day?
- What is your favourite kind of music?
- When did you start listening to this type of music?
- How do you feel when you listen to music?

1. Do you like listening to music?
I love listening to music, especially US-UK. My favourite artists are Miley Cyrus and Troye Sivan; their songs always sound awesome to me.

2. When do you listen to music?
I listen to music whenever I feel like doing so. I most often do that before going to sleep, when I'm on the bus, or when I don't have any important tasks to do.

3. Did you learn instruments?



I didn't **take up any classes on musical instruments** and haven't still. I have always wanted to learn to play the piano ever since I was a kid but never got the chance to. I'm planning on getting some piano lessons this summer.

4. Did you have any music classes in school?

I used to have music classes back when I was in primary school and secondary school. I loved my music class in secondary school. For our midterm and final tests, we had to form a group of at least four and perform a certain song that we choose ourselves. It was so much fun.

5. Do you think children must have music classes?

In my opinion, children should always have music classes. Music has been scientifically proven to have positive influences on one's way of thinking and feeling, so it will **do people good** if they can experience music from an early age.

6. What do you think of Vietnamese traditional music?

It's not really **to my taste**, to be honest. I literally cannot listen to traditional kinds of music such as "ca tru", "cai luong" or "cheo". I like listening to songs created during the war, though, maybe because my dad was a soldier. He told me stories about his years in the army, and so I can somehow **relate** deeply to those kinds of songs.

7. How much time do you spend listening to music every day?

It depends. I often listen to music when I'm doing the housework or when I'm on the bus. At that time, I feel like I can **immerse** myself in my own world. When I need to concentrate on school work, I don't listen to music as it can cause real distraction.

8. What is your favourite kind of music?

I don't have choices in music. I can pretty much listen to everything as long as it sounds good to me.

9. When did you start listening to this type of music?

[Let's just say I'm into rock music]

The first time I heard a rock song was when my dad turned on the TV, and there was a performance of a very famous rock band in Vietnam called "Buc Tuong". It was amazing. I started searching for more songs from the Vietnamese band, and songs belonging to the same genre, and have decided ever since that rock music would be a part of my spiritual life.

10. How do you feel when you listen to music?

Relaxed and free, I guess. Music, to me, is a way of hiding from all the **hustle and bustle** of everyday life. I listen to music when I'm under a lot of pressure, and feel so fine. It's the feeling of finally coming home after years and years of living far away, I think.

Vocabulary

folk songs

Meaning: songs in the traditional style of a country or community

Example: Traditional **folk songs** are part of the cultural heritage of a nation or region.

to take up a musical instrument

Meaning: to start to learn to play a musical instrument

Example: Schools should encourage all those children who have an interest **to take up a musical instrument.**

genres of music



Meaning: particular types or styles of music
Example: Different **genres of music** tend to be favoured by different age groups, with classical music more popular among the elderly.

Do somebody good [expression] (to improve someone's health or life).
E.g. You can't work all the time - it **does you good** to go out and enjoy yourself sometimes.

Be to one's taste [expression] (be something one likes).
E.g. I'm not really into new cars - old vintage cars **are more to my taste**!

Relate [verb] (to be able to understand a situation or someone's feelings because you have experienced something similar yourself).
E.g. I often wake up very early - I'm sure most readers over 50 can **relate**.

Immerse yourself in something [verb] (to become completely involved in something):
E.g. She got some books out of the library and **immersed herself in** Jewishhistory and culture.

Hustle and bustle [expression] (noise and activity).
E.g. I love the **hustle and bustle** of the marketplace.

Still [adv] (nevertheless; on the other hand).
E.g. I don't really like weddings. **Still**, I'll have to go or they'll be offended

67. TEACHER

- Do you like any teacher of yours?
- Do you still keep in touch with your teachers?
- Do you think it's important to like your teacher?
- Do you want to be a teacher?
- What qualities should a good teacher have?
- Do you have a favourite teacher?

1. Do you like any teacher of yours?
(Answer) *Yes, I do.*
(Give a reason for your answer) During the entire course of my school life, I was instructed by many lovely teachers whom I love and **respect** a lot. Among them, the person who **inspired** me the most is my English major teacher in my high school.

2. Do you still keep in touch with your teachers?
Well, after high school graduation, I still contact my Physics and English teachers **from time to time**. Besides, on special occasions like the Tet holiday or teacher's day, I still visit them with my friends to express my **gratitude.**

3.Do you think it's important to like your teacher?
(Answer) *Of course, yes.*
(Give a reason for your answer) When you have a good relationship with your teachers, you may find their way of teaching more **understandable**. Most importantly, you will feel more **motivated** in studying and in the end, perform better.

4. Do you want to be a teacher?

(Answer)*Sometimes, yes.*
(Give a reason for your answer) I'm quite **enthusiastic about** conveying knowledge to others, especially those who are willing to learn. As I'm capable of explaining things concisely and appealingly, I'm quite **cut out for** teaching.

5. (What qualities should a good teacher have?)
Well, one needs to have a lot of **attributes** to become a good teacher, in my opinion. Besides good knowledge, you also need to be patient, **diligent** and highly disciplined. Unless you are passionately devoted to teaching, you cannot call yourself a good teacher.

6. (Do you have a favourite teacher?)
I had so many favourite teachers, and it's a bit difficult to pick one, but I would say the English teacher in high school was the one I love the most. She always delivered **engaging** lessons, and unlike other teachers who compel students to learn to get good grades, she showed the beauty in learning and encouraged us to **pursue** our interests.

Vocabulary:

respect [v]: to feel or show admiration for someone or something that you believe has good ideas or qualities.
Eg: I deeply respect David for what he has achieved.

inspire [v]: to fill someone with confidence and desire to do something.
Eg: Leaders that follow the transformation style of leading, challenge and inspire their followers with a sense of purpose and excitement.

from time to time [expression]: sometimes.
Eg: I meet my old friends from time to time.

gratitude [n]: a strong feeling of appreciation for someone or something for what the person has done to help you.
Eg: I would like to express my gratitude to the feminists, both male and female, for their work in the past.

understandable [adj]: easy to understand.
Eg: You have to put the facts into a form that's understandable to everyone.

motivate [v]: to make someone eager to do something.
Eg: She managed to motivate staff to work together after the merger.

(be) enthusiastic about [adj]: showing enthusiasm.
Eg: Marcia's lifelong interest in science learning stems from growing up as the oldest child in a family enthusiastic about learning.

(be) cut out for/ to be something [n]: have exactly the right qualities for a particular role, task, or job.
Eg: I'm just not cut out to be a policeman.

attribute [n]: a quality or characteristic that someone or something has.
Eg: Organizational ability is an essential attribute for a good manager.

diligent [adj]: careful and serious in your work, or done in a careful and determined way.
Eg: He is also known as a documenter of literature that is persistent, diligent, and dedicated.

engaging [adj]: tending to please; attractive.
Eg: He has such an engaging manner.

pursue [v]: to try to achieve something.
Eg: Liam plans to pursue a career in advertising.

68. TRANSPORTATION

- What's the most popular means of transportation in your hometown?
- How often do you take buses?
- Can you compare the advantages of planes and trains?
- Is driving to work popular in your country?
- Do you think people will drive more in the future?
- Would you ride bikes to work in the future?
- What will become the most popular means of transportation in Vietnam?
- Do you prefer public transportation or private transportation?

1. What's the most popular means of transportation in your hometown?
The most **common** vehicle in my hometown is the motorbike. **As I've read** in a current newspaper, most Vietnamese adults own motorbikes. Moreover, I can easily **catch sight of** motorbikes whenever I go outside.

2. How often do you take buses?
I take buses to go to school at least twice a day as I haven't got my vehicle yet. I also usually use buses to visit my relatives or friends' homes.

3. Can you compare the advantages of planes and trains?
Aeroplanes and trains have their benefits for passengers. **Regarding** planes, they have been the fastest means of passenger transport invented so far. They enable people to travel all around the world in the shortest possible time. The biggest advantage of trains is their impressive **safety record**. Accidents are rare. So people can feel relaxed and sit back and **admire** the views from their comfortable seats.

4. **Is driving to work popular in your country?**
Yes. I'm pretty sure that private cars and motorbikes are the two most popular vehicles in my country. Therefore, it is obvious that there are a large number of people who tend to drive to work.

5. Do you think people will drive more in the future?
Yes, I think so. There will be more drivers on the roads in future due to the convenience of **motoring** and the **affordable** prices of cars.

6. Would you ride bikes to work in the future?
Yes. As I'm a young person, I like to do energetic activities to help me keep fit, so I will **give priority** to a job that is within cycling distance of my home.

7. What will become the most popular means of transportation in Vietnam?
I think motorbikes will continue to dominate due to their advantages. They are great for getting around quickly and easy to park and economical to run.

8. Do you prefer public transportation or private transportation?
Although owning a private vehicle has various advantages, I prefer using public transportation to **economize** as well as to help protect the environment.

VOCABULARY
Catch sight of (expression): to see something only for a moment
Ex: I **caught sight of** someone with red hair, so I knew that it was you.

Safety record (noun): details of how many accidents a company has had
Eg: With no accidents in the last 5 years, this airline has a good **safety record**.

Admire (verb): to look at something and think that it is attractive/impressive
Ex: We stood for a few moments, **admiring** the beautiful view.

Motoring (noun): the activity of driving a car
Ex: She's planning a **motoring** holiday in France next year.

Affordable (adjective): cheap enough for people to be able to buy
Ex: This type of car is **affordable** for people who have a low income.

Give priority to (expression): deal with something first, because you think it is more important than other things
Ex: This month I must **give priority to** revision for the exam, so I have taken some time off work.

Prevalence (noun): the fact of being very common at a particular time or in a particular place
Ex: There is a worrying increase in the **prevalence** of smoking among young people.

Dominate (verb): to be the largest, highest or most obvious thing in a place
Ex: The skyline is **dominated** by smoking factory chimneys.

Get around (phrasal verb): to move from place to place
Ex: Getting around in this city is hard, because there is too much traffic.

Park (verb): to leave a vehicle that you are driving in a particular place for a period of time
Ex: I **parked** my car in front of the supermarket while I did my shopping.

Economical (adjective): providing good value in relation to the amount of money spent
Ex: Buy a small car – it will be more **economical** to run.

Run (verb): to own and use a car or other vehicle
Ex: On my low salary, I can't afford to **run** a car.

Economize (verb): to use less money than you normally use
Ex: In winter, don't **economize** on heating – it is more important to keep warm.

69. THE AREA YOU LIVE IN

- Do you like the area that you live in?
- What are some changes in the area recently?
- Do you know any famous people in your area?
- Where do you like to go in that area?

1. Do you like the area that you live in?
Well, I am staying in District 2, and I must say that I enjoy staying in this area since there are a lot of places to visit besides the peaceful atmosphere.

2. What are some changes in the area recently?
There are more and more high-rise buildings being built in the area to meet the demand of the affluent and expats.

3. Do you know any famous people in your area?
Interestingly, I live next door to Toc Tien, who is one of the most famous pop singers in Vietnam. However, I don't see her very often because of her busy schedule.

4. Where do you like to go in that area?
I love visiting Saigon Outcast, a place where I can do rock climbing as well as socialize with foreigners.

VOCABULARY :

High-rise (adjective): (of a building) having many storeys
Example: A high-rise building was built last month, which will be the tallest building when it is finished

Meet the demand of: to do something that someone wants, needs, or expects you to do or be as good as they need, expect etc
Example: They have to work the night shift to meet the demand of buyers.

The affluent (noun): (especially of a group or area) having a great deal of money; wealthy.
Example: The affluent class is increasing in our country, which widens the gap between the rich and the poor.

Expat (noun): a person who lives outside their native country.
Example: Expats who live in Vietnam usually have well-paid jobs.

Live next door to (Idiom): To live in a house, apartment, building, etc., that is immediately adjacent to one
Example: I live next door to your friend; that's why I see him every day.

70. HOLIDAY

- What kinds of places do you like to go on holiday?
- Who would you like to go on a holiday with?
- Where do you plan to go for holidays in the future?

1. What kinds of places do you like to go on holiday?

I like beaches; therefore, I would go to a peaceful island or beautiful beaches so that I can let my hair down.

2. Who would you like to go on a holiday with?
Well, I prefer going on solo trips rather than holidaying with my friends or family since they are annoying at times.

3. Where do you plan to go for holidays in the future?
I've always dreamed of going to France, where I can taste delicious croissants and contemplate the sunset from the Eiffel Tower.

VOCABULARY:

To let one's hair down (idiom): . Drop one's reserve or inhibitions, behave casually or informally
Ex: I've been too busy with my new job. So, tonight I'm going to let my hair down and enjoy myself.

A solo trip (expression): is "alone" or "by one's self".
Ex: I find it strange when you are making a solo trip to Europre.

71. NUMBERS

- Are you good at remembering numbers?
- Do you often use numbers?)
- Is there any special number you like?

1. Are you good at remembering numbers?
(Answer) Yes. I'm quite good **when it comes to** numbers. But it depends on how the numbers are administered to me.
(Give a reason for your answer) When I look at a sequence for only 1 or 2 seconds or hear 2-3 numbers in 1 second, I can easily remember them. My immediate information **intake** is enormous and very fast compared to the average. I can easily remember **sequences** of 15-20 digits in a moment. But I haven't tried beyond that.

2. Do you often use numbers?
(Answer) Well, I must say I **seldom** use numbers.
(Give a reason for your answer) Honestly, my work doesn't involve the use of numbers**.** Still, numbers play an important role in our lives. I **assume** that whether we like it or not, our life revolves around numbers and they are connected directly or indirectly to our lives.

3. Is there any special number you like?
(Answer) Yes, absolutely.
(Give a reason for your answer) My favourite number is nine because it has unique **attributes. Multiply** nine by any number and then keep adding the digits of the number produced until there is only one left. It will always be 9. Interesting, isn't it?

Vocabulary:
when it comes to [expression]: as for something; speaking about something
Eg: When it comes to fishing, John is an expert.



intake [n]: an amount of food, air, or another substance taken into the body.
Eg: It all adds up and the excessive food and alcohol intake takes its toll on the body.

sequence [n]: a particular order in which related events, movements, or things follow each other.
Eg: A logical, progressive sequence is followed, in accordance with how I was trained in the Vaganova school.

seldom [adv]: almost never.
Eg: Seldom do we receive any apology when mistakes are made.

calculation (n): a mathematical determination of the size or number of something.
Eg: A calculation is a deliberate process that transforms one or more inputs into one or more results, with variable change.

assume [v]: to accept something as true without question or proof.
Eg: We can't assume (that) he's innocent simply because he says he is.
attribute [n]: a quality or feature regarded as a characteristic or inherent part of someone or something.
Eg: Attractive, well built, pleasant character… all the attributes required for a successful and happy life.

multiply [v]: obtain from (a number) another that contains the first number a specified number of times.
Eg: If you multiply seven by 15 you get 105.

72. PEN OR PENCIL

- When was the last time you bought a pen or pencil?
- Do you usually use a pen or pencil?
- What do you think if someone gives you a pen or a pencil as a gift?

1. When was the last time you bought a pen or pencil?
(Answer) Well, I just bought numerous pencils this morning because I had to take a written examination that required the use of pencils.
(Give a reason for your answer) I bought three pencils in case I may break one or two during the exam. I wanted to feel **self-assured.** So having extra pencils was the best guarantee I could give for myself and that helped me stop thinking of problems that I might **encounter** while taking the exam.

2. Do you usually use a pen or pencil?
(Answer) Well, I use a pencil more often as compared to a pen.
(Give a reason for your answer) As a student, I need to jot our lessons down in my notebook. **When it comes to** note-taking, the pencil is a **preferable** choice. I have **grown accustomed to relying** on the pencil to write down things ever since high school and I find it very **handy.** Strangely, I always **outperform others** in examinations that require the use of pencils, so they are also my lucky items.

3.What do you think if someone gives you a pen or a pencil as a gift?
(Answer) *For me, that's quite a strange present to give someone.*
(Give a reason for your answer) Well, I've never tried giving a pen or a pencil as a present to my loved ones or friends. However, if I did receive one, I would be glad and grateful.



Vocabulary from *Personality:*
self-assured
Meaning: confident
Example: I certainly would want my children to be self-assured and responsible.

Other vocabulary:

encounter [v]: to experience something, especially something unpleasant.
Eg: The army is reported to be encountering considerable resistance.

when it comes to [expression]: as for something; speaking about something.
Eg: When it comes to fishing, John is an expert.

preferable [adj]: more desirable or suitable.
Eg: The chairman of the board said voluntary redundancies were preferable over compulsory redundancies.

(be)/ grow accustomed to [expression]: familiar with something.
Eg: She quickly became accustomed to his messy ways.

handy [adj]: useful or convenient.
Eg: We found it handy to have a cellular phone.

outperform [v]: to do well in a particular job or activity compared to others of a similar type.
Eg: The company has consistently outperformed its rivals this season.

heartfelt [adj]: showing strong feelings that are sincere.
Eg: In the ceremony, the director expressed heartfelt gratitude to all the employees, who worked diligently for the project.

contentment [n]: a state of happiness and satisfaction.
Eg: Reddy was an avid reader and got many hours of contentment and enjoyment from books and newspapers.

73. SWEETS

- Do you like to eat sweets?
- Is your liking for sweets same as when you were a child?
- Have you ever tried to make sweets?
- Why do people like sweets?

1. Do you like to eat sweets?
(Answer) Yes, I count myself as **having a sweet tooth.**
(Give a reason for your answer) I usually have Tiramisu or a croissant for dessert. Bakery shops on the road never fail to **capture** my attention. It **makes my mouth water** to think about all the sweets displayed there.



2. Is your liking for sweets same as when you were a child?
(Answer) When I was a child, I used to eat candies and biscuits **sparingly.** However, the more I grew, the more I was into sweets. Sweets were the one thing that kept me going when things got tough. The handmade ones were, to put it simply, edible happiness, cheaper **antidepressants,** and a quick way to see the bright side of life if eaten in moderation and provided you have enough self-control.

3. Have you ever tried to make sweets?
(Answer) Honestly, I have not.
(Give a reason for your answer) I have read the recipes for my favourite cakes, but they are **by no means** simple. However, I would love to try baking cookies or making a mousse in the future.

4. Why do people like sweets?
(Answer) Our bodies are naturally wired to **crave sugar** for various reasons. When we crave for sugar, we are craving the nutrients that are found in fruit or desserts. The mental craving comes from the serotonin – a neurotransmitter that gives us a sense of **well-being**, and helps **moderate** our moods, sleep cycles and our appetite – which is released after we consume sweets.

Vocabulary from *Food:*
have a sweet tooth
Meaning: enjoy sugary food
Example: My brother has a sweet tooth and I'm afraid that he will become obese.

make your mouth water
Meaning: make you feel very hungry for something
Example: It makes my mouth water just to think about eating beef noodles.

Other vocabulary:

capture [v]: if something captures your imagination or attention, you feel very interested and excited by it.
Eg: The American drive to land a man on the Moon captured the imagination/attention of the whole world.

sparingly [adv]: in small amounts, or without wasting any.
Eg: There wasn't enough coal during the war, so we had to use it sparingly.

antidepressant [n]: an antidepressant drug.
Eg: Antidepressants are medications used to treat major depressive disorder

by no means [expression]: not at al.
Eg: It is by no means clear what the president can do to end the strike.

crave [v]: feel a powerful desire for (something).
Eg: Many young children crave attention.

well-being [n]: the state of feeling healthy and happy.
Eg: People doing yoga benefit from an increased feeling of well-being.

moderate [v]: to (cause to) become less in size, strength, or force; to reduce something.
Eg: The president may have to moderate his stance on tax cuts.

74. SCENERY

- Is there any beautiful scenery in your hometown?
- How can you try to live in a house with a good view?
- Do people like to take photos of beautiful scenery?
- Why do people prefer to use mobile phones to take photos of beautiful scenery?

1.Is there any beautiful scenery in your hometown?
(Answer) My hometown is **renowned** for its breathtaking scenery.
(Give a reason for your answer) It is an area of **outstanding** natural beauty and for me, one of the most beautiful places on earth. It has everything; historical sites, fantastic beaches, rolling mountains, dense forests and **picturesque** countryside, extraordinary cuisine and hospitable people. There are also golden palaces, temples, shrines, and an impressive dancing stage, **majestic** tombs, and ancient meditative landscapes.

2. How can you try to live in a house with a good view?
(Answer) A good location can mean different things to different people, of course, but there are also objective factors that determine a home's value. For me, it is the accessibility, appearance, and amenities of the **residential area** that are **inextricably** linked with how good the view of my house is.

3. Do people like to take photos of beautiful scenery?
(Answer) Well, I think most people do.
(Give a reason for your answer) Shooting landscapes forces you to get outside and find the beauty around you. Sometimes this means discovering places right in front of your eyes that you just never noticed were beautiful before. For me, whenever I get out and set up to shoot a landscape scene, I find that my mind is freed of worry and **distractions.**

4. Why do people prefer to use mobile phones to take photos of beautiful scenery?
(Answer) I think this is a matter of personal choice.
(Give a reason for your answer) **Handy gadgets** like phones help one to capture the beautiful scenery at any time they want. Then, they can share the photos immediately on social networking sites such as Facebook, Instagram. And when the pictures are stored in your cell phone, it is much easier to see them as compared to a professional camera.

Vocabulary from *Town and City:*

residential area
Meaning: an area where people live
Example: I live in a residential area of a busy town in the south of Spain

Vocabulary from *Technology:*

gadget
Meaning: a technological tool like a mobile phone or camera
Example: Such a gadget would help you considerably in studying.

Other vocabulary:

renowned [adj]: famous .



Eg: She felt pressure because of her renowned father.

outstanding [adj]: clearly very much better than what is usual.
Eg: Her outstanding performances set a new benchmark for singers throughout the world.

picturesque [adj]: (esp. of a place) attractive in appearance.
Eg: The city is known for its picturesque surroundings and pleasant climate.

majestic [adj]: beautiful, powerful, or causing great admiration and respect.
Eg: The majestic Montana scenery will leave you breathless.

inextricably [adv]: in a way that is unable to be separated, released, or escaped from.
Eg: The Louis Armstrong legend is inextricably linked with his recordings.

distraction (n): something that prevents someone from giving their attention to something else.
Eg: You can turn the television off if you find it a distraction.

handy [adj]: useful or convenient.
Eg: We found it handy to have a cellular phone.

75. MUSEUMS

- Do you go on field trips to museums to learn history?
- Do you learn much history at school?
- When was the last time you read a history publication?

1. Do you go on field trips to museums to learn history?
(Answer) Yes, I sometimes do.
(Give a reason for your answer) As I see it, this kind of educational trip is a beneficial way for a student to acquire knowledge and experience. History teachers in my school often organize trips to museums **to familiarize** students with historical events or figures in a **fascinating** way. I remember that the students were always in eager **anticipation** before trips to museums.

2. Do you learn much history at school?
(Answer) Well, history was my favourite subject in school
(Give a reason for your answer) I'm quite **enthusiastic about** delving into the past and learning from the mistakes our forefathers made. Besides, my History teacher in high school always delivered engaging lessons. Unlike other teachers who compelled students to learn to get good grades, she showed the beauty of learning and encouraged us to **pursue** our interests.

3. When was the last time you read a history publication?
(Answer) I'm genuinely interested in history books, so I read them frequently.
(Give a reason for your answer) The recent one I read has an **unpredictable** plot, and it has received widespread **acclaim** from book critics around the world.

Vocabulary from *Education:*
higher education:
Meaning: education, usually in a college or university that is followed after high school or secondary school
Example: Higher education is only suitable for those committed enough to learning.

Other vocabulary:

with a view to [expression]: with an intention to do something:
Eg: The politician reveals the truth with a view to gaining more faith from the public.

fascinating [adj]: extremely interesting and attractive.
Eg: Your trip to Alaska sounds absolutely fascinating.

anticipation [n]: a feeling of excitement about something that is going to happen in the near future.
Eg: The postponement of the film's sequel has held cinemagoers in eager anticipation for several months.

(be) enthusiastic about [adj]: showing enthusiasm.
Eg: Marcias's lifelong interest in science learning stems from growing up as the oldest child in a family enthusiastic about learning.

pursue [v]: to try to achieve something.
Eg: Liam plans to pursue a career in advertising.

from time to time [expression]: sometimes:
Eg: I meet my old friends from time to time.

unpredictable [adj]: likely to change suddenly and without reason and therefore not able to be predicted (= expected before it happens) or depended on.
Eg: The weather there can be unpredictable - one minute it's blue skies and the next minute it's pouring rain.

acclaim [n]: public approval and praise.
Eg: Despite the critical acclaim, the novel did not sell well.

76. ART

- Do you like art?
- Have you ever visited an art gallery?
- Is there any art work on the wall in your room?

1.Do you like art?
(Answer) I'm an **avid** fan of art.
(Give a reason for your answer) Art is a part of my life. I love art, in any form it presents itself. My heart swells once I've made something pretty. Different **genres** of art, such as music, architecture, literature, culture are appealing to me.

2.Have you ever visited an art gallery?



(Answer) Yes, I have.
(Give a reason for your answer) After I graduated, I began to enjoy taking trips to various art exhibitions. Since then, I have **established** relationships with a few friends that are artists, and now they invite me to their galleries quite often. Visiting art galleries is also a way to **keep myself updated with** new trends in the contemporary world of art. Believe it or not, this kind of experience **relieves** much of my work-related stress.

3.*Is there any art work on the wall in your room?*
(Answer) Yes, I have.
(Give a reason for your answer) Wall art draws the eye, pulls together space, and makes my home inviting. I usually hang artworks of rural areas that depict **breathtaking** scenery, space and other amazing places such as forests, lakes or mountains. These pictures always **capture the attention** of guests.

Vocabulary:

avid [n]: extremely eager or interested: say mê
Eg: He took an avid interest in the project.

genre [n]: a style, especially in the arts, that involves a particular set of characteristics
Eg: What genre does the book fall into - comedy or tragedy?

cater for [v]: to provide the things that a particular person or situation needs or wants
Eg: The class caters for all ability ranges.

establish [v]: to start having a relationship with, or communicating with another person, company, country, or organization
Eg: There is a strong need to establish effective communication links between staff, parents, pupils, and external bodies.

(to) keep oneself up to date with something[v]: keep updated with new thing
Eg: My father always tries to keep himself up to date with political news.

(to) relieve [v]: to remove or reduce an unpleasant feeling or pain
Eg: Being able to say the truth at last seemed to relieve her.

breathtaking [adj]: very exciting or impressive (usually in a pleasant way
Eg: To the whole mountain-climbing team, the scene was one of the most breathtaking beauties in the world.

capture one's attention [expression]: to interest someone
Eg: Most of the textbooks we looked at were too dull to capture students' attention.

77. CAKE

- Do you like desserts?
- Do you like eating cakes?
- Have you ever made cakes?
- What are the special cakes in your country?



1. Do you like desserts?
(Answer) Yes, I do.
(Give a reason for your answer) Eating desserts after meals make me feel more **productive** and positive. I'm sure you've turned to a box of chocolates or gobbled down an apple pie on a "bad day" so that you could feel there's still hope left in the world. Nothing can give you more pleasure than eating your favourite dessert. And this feeling is vital to your **well-being.**

2. Do you like eating cakes?
(Answer) I must admit that I **have a sweet tooth**, so cakes are my favourite kind of food.
(Give a reason for your answer) I'm **into the habit of** eating different kinds of cakes at the end of every week as a treat to myself. Somehow, this is my unique strategy to **cope with** stress related to the work-life balance. Almost every kind of cake **suits my tastes**.

3. Have you ever made cakes?
(Answer) Unfortunately, I haven't.
(Give a reason for your answer) I have read the recipes for my favourite cakes sometimes, but they are **by no means** simple. However, I would love to try baking cookies or making a mousse in the future.

4. What are the special cakes in your country?
(Answer) There is a wide range of Vietnamese cakes you shouldn't miss when you visit my country.
(Give a reason for your answer) Firstly, the square glutinous rice cake (banh chung) is a must-eat dish at Tet festival in Vietnam. It has a square shape and symbolizes the earth. This cake is made from glutinous rice wrapped in green "dong" leaves. The filling is made from mung bean, pork belly. Besides, banh xeo is famous with Vietnamese people and tourists from around the world for its great taste. Banh xeo is a crispy yellow turmeric crepe with **nutritious** ingredients such as shrimps, pork belly, mushrooms, bean sprouts.

Vocabulary from *Food:*
have a sweet tooth
Meaning: enjoy sugary food

Example: My brother has a sweet tooth and I'm afraid that he will become obese.

Other vocabulary:

productive [adj]: resulting in or providing a large amount or supply of something.
Eg: He had an amazingly productive five years in which he managed to write four novels.

well-being [n]: the state of feeling healthy and happy.
Eg: People doing yoga benefit from an increased feeling of well-being.

in the habit of [expression]: if you are in the habit of doing something, you do it regularly or often.
Eg: They were in the habit of giving two or three dinner parties a month.

cope with [v]: deal with.
Eg: It must be really hard to cope with three young children and a job.

(to) suit one's tastes [expression]: be suitable to what somebody likes or prefers .

Eg: A beautifully striped dress will be likely to suit Linda's taste.

by no means [expression]: not at all.
Eg: It is by no means clear what the president can do to end the strike.

nutritious [adj]: very good for you, containing many of the substances which help the body to grow.
Eg: My mother always gives us tasty and nutritious meals.

78. LAUGH

- Do you like to watch movies or TV shows that make people laugh?
- Do you usually make your friends laugh?
- Are you the kind of person who makes people laugh?

1. Do you like to watch movies or TV shows that make people laugh?
(Answer) Yes, I do**.**
(Give a reason for your answer) I have a cheerful **disposition**, and I'm quite **fun-loving**, so comedies are my favourite choices to feel **at ease.** I think the message in these kinds of movies remind people that life isn't simple and it doesn't come without **obstacles**, so smiling keeps you optimistic. As I see it, comedians **radiate** a warmth that draws others to them instantly.

2. Do you usually make your friends laugh?
(Answer) Yes, in various **contexts**.
(Give a reason for your answer) Yes, being able to make someone laugh is a kind of talent, I guess. Frequently, I try to tell a funny joke or a story that I find interesting to **uplift** my friends' mood. In our meetings, I do funny actions to amuse them as I **utterly** enjoy spending time with them and like to see them happy.

3. Are you the kind of person who makes people laugh?
(Answer) Yes, I think I am.
(Answer) It takes a lot of mental energy to come up with **quick-witted** quips that light up grins on others' faces. Seeing others laugh at your jokes gives a sense of **refreshment**. I count myself as fortunate to have a good sense of humour. As the old saying goes, "life's better when you're laughing".

Vocabulary from *Personality:*

fun-loving

Meaning: enjoy having fun
Example: I'd say we're fun-loving and tend to be a bit extroverted

Other vocabulary:

disposition [n]: the particular type of character that a person naturally has.
Eg: She is of a nervous/cheerful/sunny disposition.

at ease [expression]: relaxed.
Eg: She soon put/set me at ease (= made me relaxed).

obstacle [n]: something that blocks you so that movement, going forward, or action is prevented or made more difficult.
Eg: The biggest obstacle in our way was a tree trunk in the road.

radiate [v]: to express strongly an emotion or quality, or (of an emotion or quality) to be expressed strongly by someone.
Eg: He simply radiates integrity.

context [n]: the situation within which something exists or happens, and that can help explain it.
Eg: It is important to see all the fighting and bloodshed in his plays in historical context.

uplift [v]: elevate or stimulate (someone) morally or spiritually.
Eg: The people went home, uplifted by what the priest said.

utterly [adv]: completely or extremely.
Eg: She was utterly devastated when her husband died.

quick-witted [adj]: showing or characterized by an ability to think or respond quickly or effectively.
Eg: Undemonstrative, quick-witted, alert and intelligent: he has it all.

refreshment [n]: the fact of making somebody feel stronger or less tired or hot.
Eg: Minh is trying to find a place for rest and refreshment.

79. WATER SPORTS

- Have you ever played water sports?
- What water sports do you like playing?
- Are water sports popular in Vietnam?

1. Have you ever played water sports?
Yes. My childhood was **linked with** swimming because I participated in many swimming competitions during my school years.

2. What water sports do you like playing?
I would say swimming, of course. However, it seems like my preference is **shifting** to water polo from swimming. However, until now, swimming remains my favourite.

3. Are water sports popular in Vietnam?
I don't think so. Water sports facilities are not widely available in my country. I bet that many people **have no clue** what water polo is.

Vocabulary:

To be linked with something (phrase): link someone or something and someone or something together
Example: Her name is **being linked to** one of the top jobs in the company.



Shifted: move or cause to move from one place to another, especially over a small distance.
Example: She **shifted (her weight) uneasily from one foot to** the other.

to have no clue/don't have a clue (phrase):to be completely unable to guess, understand, or deal with something
Example: Who invented algebra?" "I **don't have a clue**."

80. RUNNING

- Do you like running?
- Have you ever taken a running class?
- When was your last long run?
- Why do people need to run?
- Where do you think is a good place to run?
- Do you think running is a good way to stay healthy?

1. Do you like running?
Honestly speaking, I've never given a thought to it. I'm not too fond of it because each running session drains my energy.

2. Have you ever taken a running class?
No. I **dread to** think of having to run around 10 km daily. I don't think I'll ever take part in any running class in the foreseeable future.

3. When was your last long run?
I haven't run since my last physical education class in my second year. Now I'm in my 3rd year. Thus, my last long run was like one year and a half ago.

4. Why do people need to run?
Running has been scientifically proved to be one of the very few sports which requires nearly all the muscles to function, thus benefiting almost the whole body. Therefore, people need to run to **stay healthy.**

5. Where do you think is a good place to run?
Without a doubt, parks are the most ideal for runs. Since an enormous amount of oxygen is needed when running, it is better to run inside a place where the air is fresh and has enough oxygen rather than polluted with carbon dioxide.

6. Do you think running is a good way to stay healthy?
While the gym is **eclipsing** running in terms of popularity nowadays, I believe running is an effective way to stay healthy. It is also more economical than gym.

Vocabulary:

to take up a hobby (phrase): To engage or become interested in an activity or pursuit
Example: Why don't you take up a hobby?

To dread (v): anticipate with great apprehension or fear.

Example: I **dread** to think what would happen if he was left to cope on his own.

to stay healthy (phrase): making sure not to get sick.
Example: Eating a recommended amount of vegetables helps you **stay healthy**.

81. SCIENCE

- Have you ever taken science courses?
- Is science important?
- Should we learn science?
- Did you have any science classes in elementary or high school?
- What kind of science do people usually study?

1. Have you ever taken science courses?
I have never taken any science courses before. I am a major in International Relations. My syllabus does not include subjects in science.

2. Is science important?
Although I am not a science student, I believe that it is **of great significance to** today's world, which is driven by science and technology. Without science, people would be still in the stone age.

3. Should we learn science?
Of course, everyone should know science, to some degree. Science explains the phenomenon that happens around us and helps build a strong human society and brings prosperity.

4. Did you have any science classes in elementary or high school?
Science was a compulsory subject in elementary school while high school science is divided into different subjects namely physics, biology and chemistry, which are also obligatory. Thus, I did study science in elementary and high school.

5. What kind of science do people usually study?
Normally, people focus on physics because it is more applicable in real life than biology and chemistry.

Vocabulary:

To be comprised of something (phrase): to be made up of
Example: The class is **comprised** mainly **of** Italian and French students.

To be of significance for/to something: having the quality of being "significant
Example: The discovery of the new drug is **of** great **significance for/to** people suffering from heart problems.

82. OPINIONS/IDEAS

- When should children form opinions?
- What are the benefits when children have their own opinions?
- What are the responsibilities of teachers to help children develop their ideas/opinions?
- Do you think children are taught to have the same opinions as their parents?



1. When should children form opinions?
They should be given the right to express their own opinions and participate in family affairs as soon as they start primary school, mostly at the age of 6.

2. What are the benefits when children have their own opinions?
it has numerous benefits. It helps older family members understand what the children need, thus giving them better care.

3. What are the responsibilities of teachers to help children develop their ideas/opinions?
Teachers should be responsible for sharpening children's critical thinking skills, which is vital for forming opinions. Also, they should encourage them to speak up when needed.

4. Do you think children are taught to have the same opinions as their parents?
I don't think so. Children's opinions may be similar to their parents' rather than the same. The similarity level may vary, though.

Vocabulary:

Affair (n): an event or sequence of events of a specified kind or that has previously been referred to.
Example: She organizes her **financial affairs** very efficiently.

To speak up (v): express one's opinions frankly and publicly.
Example: If you disagree, please **speak up**.

83. ALONE

- When was the last time you were alone?
- What do you like to do when you are alone?
- Do you wish to have more time alone?
- Is it essential to have some time alone?

1. When was the last time you were alone?
Answer: Maybe it was about one month ago when I made a solo trip to Thailand. I stayed there for five days and explored Bangkok on my own.

2. What do you like to do when you are alone?
Answer: I enjoy being alone on the weekend morning, reading some books, and playing computer games.

3. Do you wish to have more time alone?
Answer: Well, I'd rather hang out with my friends than being alone since friends entertain me a lot, and you need to be sociable in the society.

4. Is it essential to have some time alone?
Answer: Absolutely. There are moments that you get stressed out, and being alone can be an ideal way to let your hair down.



VOCABULARY

Solo trip (n): is “alone” or “by one's self”
Ex: You should make a solo trip to Thailand sometimes! I’m sure it’ll be fun.

To entertain somebody (v): to amuse or interest people in a way that gives them pleasure
Ex: They entertained us to a party last night.

Stressed out (adj): worried and nervous
Ex: He has been up to his ears with studying recently, no wonder he gets stressed out.

Let your hair down (Idiom): behave uninhibitedly.
Ex: Well, it’s the weekend. You should just let your hair down and relax.

PART 2 & 3

1. Describe a programme or an app that you think is useful

You should say,

- **what it is**
- **how you know it**
- **how to use it**
- **And explain why it is useful**

(what it is) (how you know it) I always had a tough time buying groceries. After a hard day’s work, it was tiring to stand in a long queue at the supermarket and purchase them. I was vigorously looking for alternatives when a friend of mine told me about this prepaid app called “Fresh to Home”. I installed it from the playstore.
(how to use it) After the initial registration, there was an option called “Wallet”. You have to fill your wallet and then place orders. I filled the wallet with a sum of Rs. 500. Then I proceeded to the store to select vegetables. They sell a variety of items ranging from diced banana stem to grated coconut, from bakery products and confectionaries to cosmetics. Also, you can decide the frequency of delivery with the “subscribe” button which will list options like ‘daily’, ‘alternate days’, ‘weekends’ or ‘custom schedule’ where you can custom your own schedule. The only thing to remember is to ensure that your wallet is not empty. You have to place orders before 8:00 PM the previous day to get it delivered at your doorstep the next morning at 6:00 AM.
(And explain why it is useful) It has saved a great deal of time. I’m relieved of the nightmare of waiting in the long queues. Also, their service is excellent. They deliver it on time every day. It is an easy-to-use and friendly app, and I’m thankful to my friend who told me about this.

VOCABULARY

Prepaid (verb) - pay for in advance
Eg: She gifted the couple with a prepaid gift card.



Playstore (noun) - Google's official pre-installed app store on Android-certified devices. It provides access to content on the Google Play Store, including apps, books, magazines, music, movies, and television programs.
Eg: I installed the English learning app from google playstore.

Wallet (noun) - a pocket-sized flat folding case for holding money and plastic cards.
Eg: Her Wallet was full of money.

Nightmare (noun) - a very unpleasant or frightening experience or prospect.
Eg: It was a great nightmare for her to find her way through the crowd.

PART 3

1. What is the importance of apps in a person's life?
(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) Apps can easily be installed from the play store. They serve various purposes**. (Give an example)** For example, an app called Urban Company offers household doorstep services like haircuts, repair of electrical appliances, plumbing, etc. There are apps for learning English, paying electricity bills, delivering food items, grocery, etc. They can be used from anywhere, anytime. So, they have become indispensable to human life.
2. Are there any drawbacks to apps?
(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) Some apps consume a lot of storage. So, it becomes a problem when installing new ones. So, you have to clear your cache constantly. Apart from this, there are no drawbacks.

3. Are these apps helpful in making honest relations?
(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) Some apps promote friendship. But there is no credibility to the information provided. It is up to the user to be smart when establishing relationships through apps.

4. How can technology make our life easier?
(Give a direct answer to the question) Technology, if used wisely, is a boon. **(Explain your reason or reasons)** They help us a great deal in our daily lives. **(Give an example)** For example, air-conditioners and refrigerators are very helpful in hot countries. The former transforms your atmosphere by making it cool while the latter helps to keep the food safe. They help us to improve our lifestyle.

5. Why are mobile phones gaining popularity?
(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) They are easy to carry and can be used from anywhere in the world. Besides, their costs are affordable. They have a lot of built-in features that make life easier. People use it not only for communication but also to listen to music, watch movies, and play games. So, it is quite natural that they are gaining popularity.

VOCABULARY

Indispensable (adj) - absolutely necessary.
Eg: Water is indispensable to human life.

Constantly (adv) - continuously over a period of time; always.
Eg: Sheela was constantly battling with her fears.



Promote (verb) - support or actively encourage (a cause, venture, etc.); further the progress of.
Eg: Kevin was advised to promote his product by making campaigns.

Boon (noun) - a thing that is helpful or beneficial.
Eg: The newly constructed lane will be a boon to the pedestrians.

Popularity (noun) - the state or condition of being liked, admired, or supported by many people.
Eg: In the 1960s, the actor was at the peak of popularity.

2. Describe a recent goal you set yourself

You should say,

- **what it was**
- **why you wanted it**
- **what you did to get your goal**
- **And explain how you felt about it**

(what it was) (why you wanted it) I seldom make new year resolutions because I don't have the determination to make them come true. So I'm usually very far from setting goals. But I did get a demanding situation in my life, where I had to take serious steps. It was my weight gain. Due to lack of physical activity, I gained 5 kgs which I noticed when my clothes did not fit properly. I was not able to put on my favourite dresses, and I became worried. So I decided to work out a plan to get rid of the 5 kgs.
(what you did to get your goal) As a first step, I decided to fight against my sugar cravings. I searched the internet, left, right and centre and found some useful tips from a nutritionist. I learnt that it is because of protein deficiency that a person craves for sweets. So I decided to cut my breakfast and replaced it with a protein smoothie. Then I consulted a physician, who advised me to do yoga. He warned that I could see results, only gradually. I joined a yoga class and stuck to the schedule religiously. Every morning, I got up at 5:00 AM in the morning, because the class was at 5:30 AM. Previously, I used to sleep at ungodly hours when I had to meet my deadlines at work. I focused more on my work and tried to complete the work within office hours. Since I had my yoga classes in the morning, I made it a habit to wake up early. I spent about an hour at the yoga class. The yoga teacher enlightened me on the importance of sleep and also advised me to cut down on my caffeine intake. She advised me to go to bed on time because it was needed for the repair of the muscles. **(explain how you felt about it)** Surprisingly, I began to get results within a month. The first that improved was the fat on my cheeks. I was not chubby cheeks anymore! I noticed that my body became flexible as a result of yoga. I was confident that I would shed my 5kgs soon, and it did happen after six months. At last, I achieved something, and I was on cloud nine when I got out of the weighing machine at the hospital. I thanked my doctor for his guidance.

VOCABULARY

Resolutions (noun) - a firm decision to do or not to do something.
Eg: She made a resolution to stop eating chocolates.

Determination (noun) - the quality of being determined; firmness of purpose.
Eg: She succeeded in becoming a Singer because of her determination.



Gradually (adverb) - in a gradual way; slowly; by degrees.
Eg: The saint assured him that his situation would improve gradually.

Religiously (adverb) - with consistent and conscientious regularity.
Eg: He works out religiously for five hours everyday.

Being on Cloud nine (noun phrase) - Blissfully happy
Eg: Ever since the marriage was fixed, she was on cloud nine.

PART 3

1. Do people need to write down goals or simply memorize them?
(Give a direct answer to the question) Writing helps. **(Explain your reason or reasons)** When a person puts down his thoughts in writing, he gains more insight into it. As you write, you get more ideas, and later they serve as a reference. At moments of exhaustion, when we feel like giving up, these notes help. They serve as a driving factor.

2. Do Indian people usually set goals?
(Give a direct answer to the question) Yes, a lot of them set goals. **(Explain your reason or reasons)** Most Indians are very resolute when it comes to achieving what they want. Mostly, goals will be related to the creation of wealth. Indians not only set goals but also work hard until it is materialized. **(Give an example)** A clear example of this would be the number of Indian students studying abroad. They have set goals for themselves during their period of study here, pursued them seriously, and also were successful in making them come true.

3. What are the kinds of goals that are unrealistic?
(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) Goals that are beyond the person's capability and passion are unrealistic. **(Give an example)** For example, an average student hailing from a middle-class family cannot dream about getting into a top university without a scholarship. Scholarships are reserved for high performers, and fees would be unaffordable. It will be an unrealistic goal.

4. What is more fulfilling working towards a goal or achieving it?
(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) Both of them equally fulfilling. When working towards a goal, one may encounter a lot of hurdles, and overcoming them builds confidence. The person gets one step closer to the goal. After achieving the goal, it is a sense of accomplishment. The person will become more confident and will be ready to face more challenges.

5. Should parents set goals for their children?
(Give a direct answer to the question) No. **(Explain your reason or reasons**) Parents should help children achieve their goals. But the goals should be set by their children. (Give an example) For example, if the child has a passion for life Sciences, then his goal would be to become a doctor as a teenager. The parent can help the child by paying the fees. But if the parent has already set a goal that his child should become a marine Engineer and forces the kid to pursue it, then the outcome may not be positive.

VOCABULARY



Reference (noun) - the use of a source of information to ascertain something.
Eg: He used the poetries of Wordsworth for reference.

Give up (phrasal verb) - cease making an effort; admit defeat.
Eg: Due to political pressure, he gave up his efforts of establishing a school in the area

Encounter (verb) - unexpectedly be faced with or experience (something hostile or difficult).
Eg: The computer scientists encountered a strange problem called Y2K.

Unrealistic (adj) - not realistic [realistic(adj) - having or showing a sensible and practical idea of what can be achieved or expected]
Eg: It is unrealistic to expect an overnight change in Tom's behavior.

Outcome (noun) - the way a thing turns out; a consequence.
Eg: It is easy to predict the outcome of the meeting.

3. Describe a large company that you are interested in

You should say,

- **what it is**
- **what it business it does**
- **how you know about it**
- **And explain how you feel about it**

(what it is) (what business it does) There are many large companies in the world today. One that I'm interested in is "AT&T". "AT&T" stands for "American Telephone and Telegraph Company". It is a pioneer in the field of telecommunications. They have carved a niche for themselves in offering broadband and fixed-line telephone services across the world.
(how you know about it) I got to know about it from my cousin who served in the company for nearly five years. He was always my inspiration, and I want to follow his footsteps.
(Explain how you feel about it) We had discussed many things about the company, which increased my desire to work for it. They have a fantastic work culture and ensure work-life balance. I have witnessed it because my cousin took part in the county tennis matches, while he worked there. I had never seen him complaining about work. Also, I have my own plans for settling abroad and amassing wealth. Since my cousin was able to work for five years, it is obvious that the attrition rate is less. I have a fairly good amount of experience with an Indian division of a Korean telecommunications company. So, I'm sure I will be able to crack the interview with "AT&T". Currently, I'm working on an important assignment upon completion of which, I will apply for "AT&T".

VOCABULARY

Telephone (noun) - a system for transmitting voices over a distance using wire or radio, by converting acoustic vibrations to electrical signals.
Eg: She made a telephone call to her aunt.

Telegraph (noun) - a system for transmitting messages from a distance along a wire, especially one creating signals by making and breaking an electrical connection
Eg: Initially the use of Telegraph was confined to the Railways.



Work life balance (noun) - the division of one's time and focus between working and family or leisure activities
Eg: Tim quit the company due to poor work life balance.

Telecommunications (noun) - The branch of technology concerned with telecommunication (communication over a distance by cable, telegraph, telephone, or broadcasting.)
Eg: She graduated from Cambridge in Telecommunications

PART 3

1. Are there many big companies in your country?
(Give a direct answer to the question) Yes, there are a lot of them. **(Explain your reason or reasons)** India is home to several IT Giants like Infosys, Wipro, TCS, and Tech Mahindra. There are also many foreign investment banks like Société Generale, Goldman Sachs, and Wells Fargo.

2. What are the good things about working for a big company?
(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) The pay package would be very high. Attrition rates would be low. There would be a lot of opportunities for international travel. There would be many additional benefits like insurance, perks, and bonuses.

3. Should big companies donate more to charities?
(Give a direct answer to the question) They should. **(Explain your reason or reasons)** Now CSR or Corporate social responsibility is made law in India. The aim is to pressurize society's wealthier sections to help the poor and help eradicate social inequalities in the nation. There are many trusts set up by the wealthy industrialists to build schools and Universities.
4. Is it difficult to get a promotion in a large company?
(Give a direct answer to the question) Not at all. **(Explain your reason or reasons)** Be it a large company or small company, it is up to the person to get himself noticed. Large companies have many divisions within them. So, if one project does not offer the required growth, there is no need to quit the company. You can switch to another project with ease, which is not possible in a small company.

5. Should big companies be punished more seriously if they break the law?
(Give a direct answer to the question) Undoubtedly, yes. **(Explain your reason or reasons)** Big companies generate more revenue and are symbols of national pride. So, they should be more responsible in ensuring that they abide by the law. They should be punished harder because they bring down the nation's image in the international arena.

VOCABULARY

Giant (adj) - of very great size or force, gigantic.
Eg: Mittal is a giant in the steel manufacturing business.

Pressurize (verb) - attempt to persuade or coerce (someone) into doing something.
Eg: Her father pressurized her to study maths.

Eradicate (verb) - destroy completely; put an end to.
Eg: The political party came to power with the promise that it will eradicate poverty.

Abide (verb) - accept or act in accordance with (a rule, decision, or recommendation)



Eg: John agreed to abide by the rules of the organisation.

Image (noun) - the general impression that a person, organization, or product presents to the public.

Eg: The actor had a good image.

4. Describe an article you read about healthy living

You should say,

- **what it was about**
- **when you read it**
- **where you read it**
- **and explain what you learnt from it**

(what it was about) (when you read it) (where you read it) I've come across several videos in youtube. I subscribed for many cookery videos last year, and interestingly one of the chefs had an interview with Mrs X, a nutritionist. It was very impressive that I looked for her articles on the internet and found that she had a website called "abc.com". **(explain what you learnt from it)** I studied the website every nook and corner and found the tips to be very useful. I especially like the way she has categorised the information into "myths", "facts" and "truths". I learnt that if you are craving for something sinful, like sweets and savouries all through the day, you ought to find a healthy alternative and work on analysing why you've got such a craving. I also learnt that not all fats are bad for health. I got to know the difference between trans fat and saturated fat. It was surprising to know that we need some fats like Omega3 and Omega6, and it is too much trans fat that leads to conditions like a heart attack. Also, the website strongly stated that being slim doesn't mean a person is healthy and that we should not judge anyone's health by their weight. There were many such myths and explanations given which clarified many of my doubts on health. I found the website very informative.

VOCABULARY

Nutritionist (noun) - a person who studies or is an expert in nutrition
Eg: In an interview with the press, the nutritionist gave some tips on weight loss.

Craving (noun) - a powerful desire for something.
Eg: Tina had a craving for sweets.

Alternative (noun) -one of two or more available possibilities.
Eg: Nuts are a healthy alternative to snacks.

Trans Fat (noun) - An unhealthy substance that is made through the chemical process of hydrogenation of oils.
Eg: Trans fat is found in microwave popcorns and non-dairy coffee creamers.

Slim (adj) - (of a person or their build) gracefully thin; slender.
Eg: Margaret had a slim figure.

Part 3

1. Why do different people like to read different magazines?



(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) Tastes, passions, and pursuits differ from person to person. Also, there are magazines for every field. Tech-savvy people read magazines like PC Quest. For general reading, people choose magazines like Reader's Digest. Those interested in films read magazines like Filmfare.

2. What kind of magazines do teenagers like to read?
(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) Generally, they like to read about sports, fitness, and movies. Some prefer to read technical stuff. Girls would be interested in reading about what is trending in fashion.

3. What's the difference between the news on TV and news in magazines?
(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) On the television, you just get a gist of the news. But in magazines, it will be analyzed in detail. There would be an exhaustive coverage provided. **(Give an example)** For example, in case of a murder, news on TV would just brief that such a thing has happened, whereas in magazines they probe into the causes, analyze various factors, and it would be more or less like a detective report.

4. Do people like to read news from the Internet?
(Give a direct answer to the question) Yes, a lot of them do. **(Explain your reason or reasons)** Almost all major newspapers have an internet version. Some of the content will be free, and when you want to read in detail, they will ask you to pay for it.

5. Do you think the people today are healthier than those in the past?
(Give a direct answer to the question) No. **(Explain your reason or reasons)** Even when there are many campaigns on health, and there is increased awareness, the average lifespan has decreased. People of yesteryears lived until their nineties. Now sixty has become the average age. Though medical facilities have improved, people today suffer from a lot of diseases.

VOCABULARY

Tech-savvy (adj) - well informed about or proficient in the use of modern technology, especially computers.
Eg: The youth of today are very tech-savvy.

Trending (adj) - currently popular or widely discussed online, especially on social media websites.
Eg: Ashley's murder was trending in today's evening news.

Gist (noun) - the substance or general meaning of a speech or text.
Eg: It was hard to get a gist of the saint's speech.

Awareness (noun) - knowledge or perception of a situation or fact.
Eg: There was an increased awareness of pandemic among the public.

Lifespan (noun) - The length of time a person or animal lives or a thing function.
Eg: The lifespan of a mosquito is very short.

5. Describe an interesting animal you have seen



You should say,

- **what it was**
- **where you saw it**
- **what it was doing**
- **and explain why it was interesting.**

(what it was) (where you saw it) My Company had organised a trip to Thekkady in Kerala. On reaching there, we had boating around a river. While we were on the boat, we saw beautiful landscapes, tall trees and the whole area was just splendid. It seemed more like a forest, and suddenly one of my friends started jumping in joy. We turned towards her and were equally surprised to see a tiger roaming in the woods. We were at a safe distance from the bank. So we enjoyed seeing the wild animal without fear.
(what it was doing) (explain why it was interesting) It was around 3:00 PM. I was looking keenly into its eyes. Those powerful ones, capable of nocturnal vision. I've watched the tiger pounce on its prey on the television, but never got a chance to see it live. It roamed hither and thither and seemed to be searching for something. Slowly, it came near the water and then went back to the tall trees. It kept doing the same thing for over three times. Then it sat down on the grass, opening its mouth wide open. The canines were very much visible. The yellow and white stripes on it were glistening. It was such a spectacular sight. Slowly, it got up and moved towards the tall trees and into the woods. As the boat moved further, we lost sight of it.

VOCABULARY
Roaming (adj) - moving about aimlessly or unsystematically, especially over a wide area.
Eg: The herds of deer were roaming near the grasslands.

Woods (noun) - an area of land, smaller than a forest, that is covered with growing trees.
Eg: The peacock quickly vanished into the woods.

Nocturnal (adj) - done, occurring, or active at night.
Eg: There are many nocturnal animals.

Glistening (adj) - shining with a sparkling light.
Eg: The golden sculpture was glistening.

Part 3

1. **Why do people like to keep pets?**
(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) Pets such as dogs and cats show unconditional love for their masters. Some people keep them for fun while others keep them to ward off their loneliness. Some people love them so much that they provide for pets in their will.

2. **What should we do to protect endangered animals?**
(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) Many animals are endangered. **(Give an example)** For example, it is estimated that only 3500 tigers are remaining in the world. Hunting should be abolished. Blue cross societies should be strengthened. Also, we should increase awareness among the public.

3. **Is experimenting on animals harmful to them?**

(Give a direct answer to the question) Undoubtedly, yes. **(Explain your reason or reasons)** Scientists should be forced to look for alternatives. The experiments conducted on animals should be deemed unacceptable. There should be strict rules in place to avoid using animals for experiments.

4. Why do some people refuse to eat animals?
(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) Some are vegans from birth. Some people stop eating animals after being influenced by vegan communities. Some people fear that they would fall prey to the diseases that animals may have. So, they stop eating animals.

5. What would happen when some species disappear on earth?
(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) Balance of the ecosystem would be disturbed. It would have an indirect impact on human lives, which we would realize much later. Also, we would miss out on some exquisite creations of nature.

VOCABULARY

Pet (noun) - a domestic or tamed animal kept for companionship or pleasure.
Eg: John had a cat as his pet animal.

Ward off (phrasal verb) - to keep it from happening.
Eg: The mother advised the child to eat a lot of fruits to ward off diseases.

Endangered (adj) - (of a species) seriously at risk of extinction.
Eg: The Government has enforced strict laws to protect the endangered species of birds.

Vegan (noun) - a person who does not eat or use animal products.
Eg: John was a strict vegan

Ecosystem (noun) - a biological community of interacting organisms and their physical environment.
Eg: The pond ecosystem was disturbed due to the release of effluents from a nearby factory.

6. Describe a (school or company) uniform you have worn.

You should say,

- **what it was**
- **how you got it**
- **what it looked like**
- **and explain how you felt about it**

(what it was) (how you got it) (what it looked like) Uniforms enforce discipline, wherever they are worn. I work for a company, and we don't have any uniforms here. But I did wear uniforms when I was in school. My parents purchased a new set of uniform every year because I grew up very fast. We got it stitched from the tailor in the school. We wore white shirts and white skirts on Mondays. From Tuesday to Thursday, we wore white shirts with grey vertical stripes on it and grey pinafores. On Fridays, we wore coloured shirts and white skirts. The colour depended on the sports group you belonged to. There were four different sports groups called Red Roses, Blues, Green leaves and Violets. I belonged to the Violets and hence wore a violet shirt. We were all given metal badges bearing our school emblem, and we pinned it on our uniforms.



(explain how you felt about it) I had a great sense of pride whenever I wore them. Infact, they distributed first rank badges for those who secured first in class. It was a metal badge painted in red with the letters “FIRST RANK” inscribed on it. I always topped the class. So I wore it along with my school badge. I always wore neat and ironed uniforms, and my teachers appreciated me for it. I was especially fond of Fridays because I loved the violet shirt. I thought It made me look pretty. As I was living in the southern part of India, which had a tropical climate, we did not have separate uniforms for winters.

VOCABULARY
Uniform (noun)- the distinctive clothing worn by members of the same organization or body or by children attending certain schools.
Eg: The employees of ABC company wore brown uniforms.

Pinafore (noun) - a collarless sleeveless dress worn over a blouse or jumper.
Eg: Sheela’s uniform was a blue shirt and a grey pinafore.

Badges (noun) - a small piece of metal, plastic, or cloth bearing a design or words, typically worn to identify a person or to indicate membership of an organization or support for a cause.
Eg: The committee distributed green badges for its volunteers.

Emblem (noun) - a heraldic device or symbolic object as a distinctive badge of a nation, organization, or family.
Eg: The school’s emblem was a golden trumpet.

Inscribed (adj) - (of a surface or object) marked with characters
Eg: The complex was inscribed with beautiful poetries

Part 3

1. Why should students wear uniforms?
(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons). It creates a sense of uniformity among children. You would never get to know who is poor and rich because everyone will be wearing the same dress. This is the best thing about uniforms. Apart from this, uniforms instill discipline among students. It creates an identity for them. So, uniforms are necessary.

2. On what occasion should people wear uniforms?
(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) Uniforms are not meant for occasions. They don't serve the purpose if worn only for events. Also, it is not cost-effective when worn only for occasions. It makes more sense if worn every day.

3. Should companies ask employees about the design of their uniforms?
(Give a direct answer to the question) Yes, they can take the opinion of the employees. **(Explain your reason or reasons)** They would participate eagerly because it is the dress that they are going to wear every day. They will look forward to wearing the uniforms they designed and will carry a sense of pride.

4. Can people tell someone's personality by his or her clothes?
(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) Of course, "Dress maketh a man." We are indeed judged by what we wear. But this may not be applicable in all circumstances. **(Give an example)** For example, a brilliant guy who is working on an important project with a tight

deadline may not tend to notice much on what he is wearing to the office. But he may be the go-to person in that project. On completion of this assignment, he may concentrate on his dress. So, you cannot always judge a person by his or her clothes.

5. What colour would catch people's attention most?
(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) It depends on the occasion. Dull pastel colours are appreciated in the office whereas bright colours attract attention in a party or wedding. But there is a psychology behind colours. Once upon a time, blue was considered to attract everybody. But it keeps changing.

VOCABULARY

Instill (verb) - to put a feeling, idea, or principle gradually into someone's mind, so that it has a strong influence on the way that person thinks or behaves.
Eg: A parent must instill confidence in his kids.

Occasions (noun) - a particular time, especially when something happens or has happened
Eg: John met Kim on several occasions to discuss the partnership.

Circumstances (noun) - a fact or event that makes a situation the way it is
Eg: Under no circumstances, were the workers allowed to approach the union.

Goto person (noun) - used to describe the best person to deal with a particular problem or do a particular thing.
Eg: Ram was the go-to person in his office.

Attract (verb) - (of people, things, places, etc.) to pull or draw someone or something towards them, by the qualities they have, especially good ones
Eg: Roses attracted the little girl.

7. Describe an important text message you received

You should say,

- **what it was**
- **when you got it**
- **who you got it from**
- **and explain what you did after reading it**

(what it was) (when you got it) (who you got it from) This is the era of smartphones. But some people still use messaging services. My aunt is one of them. She is a retired customs officer. She has a daughter who has moved to the US. I was so fond of her from my childhood, mainly because my mum influenced me to think highly of her. Last month, my phone beeped. When I looked at it, it was a message from my aunt. She had typed that since she needed to take a steroid injection for which she will be anaesthetized, she needed someone to help her in the hospital at 3:00 PM, to hold her belongings and to attend to the request of the nurses.
(explain what you did after reading it) I never gave a second thought. I immediately replied saying I'll be there at her home in the next half-an-hour and we could go to the hospital together. I dressed up and rushed to my parking area, picked up my two-wheeler and hurried to her place. I was there



by 1:00 PM. She greeted me with herbal tea. She was 70 and seemed a bit worried about the injection procedure. I comforted her, eased her tension, ensured that I would be there all along and would drop her home. I could see that she felt better. I accompanied her to the hospital, and waited until the entire procedure got over. She regained consciousness by 6:00 PM. The doctor immediately discharged her. Then I dropped her home and stayed with her till 9:00 PM and got back home by 10:00 PM. I felt very happy to have got a chance to help her.

VOCABULARY

Smartphone (noun) - a mobile phone that performs many of the functions of a computer, typically having a touchscreen interface, Internet access, and an operating system capable of running downloaded apps.
Eg: She bought a brand new smartphone out of her first salary.

Beeped (verb) - (of a horn or electronic device) produce a beep (a short, high-pitched sound emitted by electronic equipment or a vehicle horn.).
Eg: The phone beeped loudly.

Text message (noun) - an electronic communication sent and received by mobile phone.
Eg: She sent a text message to her boyfriend.

Discharged (verb) - tell (someone) officially that they can or must leave a place or situation.
Eg: She was discharged from hospital after three days of her surgery.

Part 3

1. How do people in India deliver important information?
(Give a direct answer to the question) Most people in India use email nowadays. **(Explain your reason or reasons)** As smartphones are available to everyone, people use apps like WhatsApp to deliver important messages. There are some exceptions who write letters too.

2. Are traditional paper mails valued in the present days?
(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) They are used only by people who do not have access to the latest technology. The concept of traditional paper mails has become outdated. Even in rural areas, people prefer electronic mails over paper mails. They are handwritten, which makes them very special. Apart from this, they don't carry any other significance.

3. Have our ways to communicate with each other changed in recent years?
(Give a direct answer to the question) Yes, there is a drastic change**. (Explain your reason or reasons)** Earlier, people used handwritten letters or typed them in a typewriter. It took a considerable amount of time to reach the intended person. Nowadays, email reaches the recipient in no time. Electronic mails have made communication easy.

4. What are the advantages of sending messages via social applications?
(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) It helps people to stay connected. **(Give an example)** For example, a person may be working in a company in India, and his friend in school may be living in Australia. It is social media that helps them to communicate efficiently. They can share photos of families, trips that they have been to, chat, or make video calls. So social media helps both of them to be updated on what each other is doing.



5. What is the information that cannot be communicated via text messages?
(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) Certain confidential information related to Military secrets cannot be shared via text messages. There are many hackers, and one can even probe information bypassing the encryption protocols.

VOCABULARY

Letters (noun) - a written message from one person to another, usually put in an envelope and sent by post
Eg: Sita wrote a letter to the bank.

Access (noun) - the right or opportunity to use or look at something
Eg: The internet cafe gave limited access to its customers

Typewriter (noun) - a machine with keys that you press to produce letters and numbers on paper
Eg: The Company still uses a typewriter.

Confidential (adj) - secret or private, often in a formal, business, or military situation
Eg: The manager discussed some confidential information with Sam.

Encryption (noun) - the process of changing electronic information or signals into a secret code (= system of letters, numbers, or symbols) that people cannot understand or use without special equipment
Eg: The ATM uses secure encryption software that enables secure money transactions.

8. Describe a successful small company

You should say,

- **what this company is**
- **how you know about it**
- **what it produces**
- **and explain why you think this company is successful**

(what this company is) (how you know about it) (what it produces) The world has plenty of new ideas. Last week, I received a video from my friend on Whatsapp. The video started with a man placing orders in a hotel and waiting for his meal. His waiting time increased and out of hunger, he started eating the spoons, cups, and plates on the table. Then there was a voice which said that they were meant for edible purposes only. They were edible cutleries, manufactured by two housewives in Bangalore. I became interested in the business and watched the video completely.
(explain why you think this company is successful) The raw materials required for this business are very cheap. They are organic natural ingredients like wheat, jowar, rice powder, millets, grains, pulses and spices. They started making this at home where they made moulds of cups and spoons manually. When they became confident, they started it as a business named “ABC”. The manufacturing involves simple processes like preparing the concoctions, moulding by hand and by machines and placing them in an oven. It is a zero-waste, biodegradable, no plastic venture. Even if the person throws it into the environment, it gets dissolved within 40 minutes and gets converted to manure. I think the success of this business is due to the disasters caused by plastic. They have



started this business at just the right time when the government has banned the use of plastics and hotels and supermarkets are looking for an alternative.

VOCABULARY
Edible (adj) - fit to be eaten (often used to contrast with unpalatable or poisonous varieties).
Eg: Those berries are edible.

Raw material (noun) - the basic material from which a product is made.
Eg: The interior decorator purchased his raw materials from a wood cutter.

Moulds (noun) - a hollow container used to give shape to molten or hot liquid material when it cools and hardens
Eg: The shopkeeper poured hot liquid into mould to prepare the Ganesha idol.

Concoctions (noun) - a mixture of various ingredients or element.
Eg: It was a delicious smelling concoction of various flower essences.

Biodegradable (adj) - (of a substance or object) capable of being decomposed by bacteria or other living organisms and thereby avoiding pollution.
Eg: Bacteria can process wastes into biodegradable materials

Part 3

1. What do you think can be considered as emerging industries?
(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) Emerging industries are those that are formed around a new product or centred around a new idea and are in the early stages of development. They are often centred around new technology. For example, AI health care is an emerging industry.

2. Is market research important for export business?
(Give a direct answer to the question) Market research is essential for success in the export business. **(Explain your reason or reasons)** You have to research your target market and understand its characteristics to reach better. If market research is not done, it leads to mistakes that result in losses.

3. In business, do companies need to be competitive?
(Give a direct answer to the question) Undoubtedly, yes. **(Explain your reason or reasons)** You need to be aware of what your competitors do and then improve your product. The more your product is chosen over your competitors, the more grateful you become and pressurized to maintain the quality of your products.

4. How can businesses benefit the community in which they are located?
(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) Firstly, they create employment opportunities. There are other benefits, as well. Business owners may donate to the needy, participate in charity events, contribute to local non-profit organizations, and motivate youngsters by giving lectures.

5. What kind of small businesses are the most popular?



(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) Businesses related to clothes such as boutiques, in food such as cafes, in transport such as pick up and drop services, in e-commerce such as doorstep delivery services are very popular.

VOCABULARY

Emerging (adj) - growing and developing, esp. in business investment.
Eg: The United Nations should pay more attention to emerging democracies.

Target (noun) - a person or a particular group of people that something is directed at, or that something is intended for
Eg: The target audience for the cricket match is young people aged between 16- 19.

Grateful (adj) - showing or expressing thanks, especially to another person
Eg: Sita was grateful to Sheela for all that she had done.

Donate (verb) - to give money or goods to help a person or organization
Eg: People were asked to donate generously to the red cross.

Boutiques (noun) - a small shop that sells fashionable clothes, shoes, jewelry, etc.
Eg: Sita purchased some dresses from the new boutique

9. Describe an ideal house or apartment you would like to live in

You should say,

- **where it is**
- **what it looks like**
- **what features it would have**
- **and explain why it would be ideal for you.**

(where it is) (what it looks like) (what features it would have) Currently, I live in an apartment. But in future, I would like to live in a Villa. There's one coming up near Krater Ram Railway junction, and I'm eyeing on it. From the exterior, it looks like a Spanish bungalow. In the interior, it looks perfectly Indian. Everyone knows that a Villa would have facilities like the swimming pool, mini gym, private spa area, home theatre, games room, mini-garden, tennis court, yoga area and outdoor lounging area. Additionally, I will create space for a reading room.
(explain why it would be ideal for you) I would enjoy the serenity that is inherent in the Villas. I would decorate my garden with rare species from the plant kingdom. In the mornings, I would meditate in the yoga area. In the afternoons, I would relax in the lounge or watch movies in the home theatre. In the evenings, I would play virtual games with the Xbox gaming console. On weekends, I would enjoy a relaxing head massage in the spa. I would be able to live in a world of my own. I would be able to sense and appreciate the tranquility of the space. In the apartment, you would have to approach the association for every silly thing. But I would reign my space in the Villa. As I think of it, I get a feel of an Empress. I guess that's my ideal living space.

VOCABULARY



Villa (noun) - (especially in continental Europe) a large and luxurious country house in its own grounds.
Eg: She purchased a serene Villa in the outskirts of a city.

Bungalow (noun) - (in SE Asia) a large detached house with more than one storey.
Eg: She lived in a bungalow near the lake.

Lounging (verb) - lie, sit, or stand in a relaxed or lazy way.
Eg: He was lounging about sipping tea.

Ideal (adj) - satisfying one's conception of what is perfect; most suitable.
Eg: She found her ideal man.

Part 3

1. Do most Indian people live in an apartment or house?
(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) It depends on whether you are in the City or countryside. Most people in cities live in apartments as there is not much space available. People in the countryside live in big independent houses.

2. Do young people in your country like to live with their parents or by themselves?
(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) Most young people prefer to live with their parents. But once they finish school, they relocate to another country or city for education or career pursuits.

3. Do Indian people like to rent a place to live?
(Give a direct answer to the question) No. **(Explain your reason or reasons)** The majority of them like to live in their own homes. They are willing to buy a house on loan and pay the EMIs rather than living in one for rent.
4. How is modern home design in your country different from that of the past?
(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) It is very different from that of the past. People used cement constructions in the past. But it is slowly being replaced by plywood. (Give an example) For example, nowadays, we don't have cement lofts or Almiras. Instead, we have wooden ones. We have false ceiling roofs instead of the plain ones.

5. Do people prefer to live in Modern Homes or the older style homes (for example from 50 years ago)?
(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) Nobody wants to live in old-style homes. Even if the exterior is traditional, they ensure that they have all the modern facilities inside. The main advantage of modern homes is that they have better facilities for fitting electronic gadgets.

VOCABULARY

Countryside (noun) - land not in towns, cities, or industrial areas, the hat is either used for farming or left in its natural condition
Eg: Tom visited the countryside every summer.

Relocate (verb) - to (cause a person or Company to) move to a new place
Eg: The old couple relocated to India.



EMI (noun) - Equated monthly installment, as the name suggests, is one part of the equally divided monthly outgoes to clear off an outstanding loan within a stipulated time frame.
Eg: Ram paid his EMIs on time.

Ceiling (noun) - the inside surface of a room that you can see when you look above you
Eg: Ceilings are usually painted in white.

Gadgets (noun) - a small device or machine with a particular purpose
Eg: He purchased new kitchen gadgets for his modular kitchen.

10. Describe a job you would not like to do in the future

You should say,

- **what it is**
- **how it is done**
- **how you know about it**
- **and explain why you would not like to do this job.**

(what it is) (how it is done) (how you know about it) After completing my Bachelors in India, I moved to the US to pursue my Masters in Computer Science. The scholarship I got was meagre and was just enough for the college fee. I got to know from my professor that there was a vacancy in a medical laboratory nearby. So I took up a job as a medical lab assistant to supplement my expenses. I worked in the evenings. I opted for it because I had no choice. The job involved analysis of samples of body tissue taken from patients, like blood. The key ability required was good eyesight because you have to work on fine samples. I wore spectacles, and as my power increased, I wore thick lenses. **(explain why you would not like to do this job)** I had to strain myself to do the job. It was very taxing. As I worked on the samples, I was always at the fear of giving a wrong analysis. I never trusted my findings and re-checked them over and over again. This way, I was very slow. I took more time to complete one analysis. It was not a highly paid job, but it did require some skills. Though my analysis was correct most of the time, I did fewer samples in a day than what was expected. I was being supervised by a chinese lady. She always complained that I was not upto the mark. I tried to explain my situation, but she would not listen to it. After a hard day at the university, this job made my life more strenuous. It was a tough and testing time of my life. I was determined not to quit on my own. Somehow, I managed to finish the two years of my Masters. But I would never take up the job of a medical lab assistant.

VOCABULARY
Meagre (adj) - (of something provided or available) lacking in quantity or quality.
Eg: She had meagre income from her job as a typist.

Supplement (verb) - add an extra element or amount to.
Eg: She did stitching to supplement her husband's low income.

Lab assistant (adj phrase) - Lab Assistants are responsible for helping technologists and scientists during lab tests and research.
Eg: She worked as a lab assistant for nearly fifteen years.



Samples (noun) - a small part or quantity intended to show what the whole is like.
Eg: The investigation involved analysing the samples of blood.

Strenuous (adj) - requiring or using great effort or exertion.
Eg: She made strenuous attempts to learn maths.

Part 3

1. Which do young people generally prefer – boring jobs with higher pay or interesting jobs with lower pay?

(Give a direct answer to the question) I think it is tough to generalize. It varies from person to person. **(Explain your reason or reasons)** There are people who work for money and also people who work for passion. If their goal is money-making, they will be able to bear with a tedious job. If they work for passion, then money does not matter.

2. Which do you prefer, physical work or work involving thinking?
(Give a direct answer to the question) I prefer to think and work rather than doing something which requires manual effort. **(Explain your reason or reasons)** It is not that I disrespect physical work, but it is just that I won't be the right fit for it. Nowadays, there are hardly any jobs that require physical labour. Everything is automated.

3. How do young people today decide their career?
(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) I think the younger generation today makes brilliant career choices. They are more mature. There is a lot of material available on the internet. Social media like Facebook and YouTube assist them in their research. So, they don't have to look up to their elders for suggestions. There are also many career advices given in schools and colleges, which helps them decide on the right career path.

4. What factors should be considered when choosing jobs?
(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) First of all, a person needs to analyze if they have the required skills for the job. Then, the salary package and growth opportunities should be taken into consideration. If a job is chosen based on these factors, there is no need to switch jobs often.

5. Some people will lose their jobs because of technology, how to deal with it?
(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) Everyone must upskill themselves time and again. People should keep themselves updated with the latest changes and observe the trends in their respective jobs. This way, they can remain safe, even if their current technology becomes outdated.

VOCABULARY

Generalize (verb) - make a general or broad statement by inferring from specific cases.
Eg: It is tough to generalize which category is poor.

Money making (noun) - the action of earning a lot of money.
Eg: The main aim of the political party was money-making.

Automated (adj) - operated by largely automatic equipment.



Eg: ABC company automated 75% of its operations.

Upskill (verb) - (of an employee) learn additional skills.
Eg: Ram received an increment because he upskilled himself in the latest technology.

Outdated (adj) - out of date; obsolete.
Eg: Some computer languages have become outdated.

11. Describe a practical skill you learned

You should say,

- **what it was**
- **how you learned it**
- **why you learned it**
- **and explain how you felt about it.**

(what it was) I learned to drive.
(how you learned it) (why you learned it) I take a bus to my office every day. My office starts at 10:00 AM in the morning, but I start from home at 8:00 AM. The bus stop is a fifteen-minute walk from my house. After reaching there, I had to wait for a minimum of ten minutes for my bus to arrive. It was a journey of 15 minutes. Upon alighting, I had to walk about 15 minutes to reach my office. This was a very tiring exercise. So I decided to learn to ride a two-wheeler. Though I was scared of the traffic in the city, the dull daily routine of boarding the bus made me stubborn. My determination to ride a two-wheeler increased day by day. I requested my neighbour to teach me to ride. He gladly agreed to it. Initially, I fell down, not being able to bear the weight of the vehicle. After the initial hiccups, he finally succeeded in teaching me how to control the throttle. I was able to drive.
(explain how you felt about it) I felt like I was driving a celestial vehicle. I got used to the roads, its speed breakers, and my balance improved day by day. I developed a sense of pride. My confidence increased. I felt like a new human being altogether. I enjoyed it whenever I finished my ride successfully. It was a sense of accomplishment. As days passed by, I was able to get more balance and was enjoying it even as I was driving. I got rid of my road fears completely. Nowadays, I start from my home at 9:30 AM only. So I have plenty of time to do other things.

VOCABULARY
Drive (verb) - operate and control the direction and speed of a motor vehicle.operate and control the direction and speed of a motor vehicle.
Eg: She learnt to drive the vehicle.

Hiccups (noun) - a temporary or minor problem or setback.
Eg: He just had a bit of hiccups in his otherwise wonderful service.

Throttle (noun) - a device controlling the flow of fuel or power to an engine.
Eg: The bike was in its full throttle.

Speed breaker (noun) - a speed bump.
Eg: Speed breakers can help reduce the accidents.

Part 3

1. What age will make it difficult for a person to learn a skill?
(Give a direct answer to the question) In my perception, there is no age limit for learning. **(Explain your reason or reasons)** Some people read newspapers at the age of 80. Also, it depends on how important that skill is for them. But I agree that under normal conditions, as a person gets older, he or she may develop some health problems that may reduce their capacity to concentrate.

2. Will the age of 5 or 20 be better?
(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) I feel age five would be better to acquire any skill. **(Give an example)** For example, I have seen singers and dancers train their kids from the age of 3. They become masters at a very early age of 15.
At 5, you are flexible, and your mind is more capable of absorbing things.

3. What is the difference between children learning what they like and learning what they have to learn?
(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) Kids must go to school and get a good grasp of Maths, Science, and Languages. But, when they find it difficult to learn these, the parents have to identify their inborn talent. If allowed to pursue, they may shine in it.

4. Do you like to learn new skills constantly?
(Give a direct answer to the question) Yes, of course. I would love to. **(Explain your reason or reasons)** I recently learnt how to play the guitar. I also learnt a new computer language called Python. It is refreshing when you learn it and fills you with a sense of accomplishment when you have finished learning it.

5. Why do boys tend to have better critical thinking skills?
(Give a direct answer to the question) I don't think so. It does not vary based on gender. **(Explain your reason or reasons)** Instead, it varies from person to person. It may vary between boys and girls. Also, there is no scientific evidence that boys have better critical thinking skills.

VOCABULARY

Age limit (noun) - is the oldest or youngest age at which you are allowed under particular regulations to do something.
Eg: There is no age limit to join the actor's fans club

Acquire (verb) - learn or develop (a skill, habit, or quality).
Eg: You must acquire the fundamentals of Grammar.

Master (adj) - having or showing very great skill or proficiency.
Eg: Raman became a master in dance at the age of twelve.

Refreshing (adj) - welcome or stimulating because new or different.
Eg: It was a refreshing walk in the garden.

Proof (noun) - evidence or argument establishing a fact or the truth of a statement.
Eg: There was no proof of his crime.



12. Describe a road trip you went on

You should say,

- **where you went**
- **who you went with**
- **what happened on the trip**
- **And explain how you felt about it**

(where you went) (who you went with) One of my friends had bought a new car with a sunroof. We gathered at this place to have a look at it. Suddenly, he volunteered to take all of us to a bird sanctuary located on a mountain. I was a two-hour drive from his place. All of us agreed to the plan. Our plan was to shout out loud by standing on the sunroof. We decided to do this as we moved atop the mountain. I had some fear of heights. But I did agree to the plan.
(what happened on the trip) After about an hour, we reached downhill, had some refreshing tea and headed upwards. Slowly we were going up the mountain. I was able to sense the height. A chill ran down my spine. But it was only a few minutes, and my fears vanished when my friends started talking about the beautiful scenery. As we drove higher up, one of them reminded us of the sunroof. One of them opened it, peeped through it and shouted loudly "Hip Hip Hurray". One after the other tried it. The car was on the move, though. Then came my turn. I thought I better get the guts to try it out. Initially, it was nervous, but when I peeped out through the sunroof, the beautiful flowers and the soft winds changed my mind. I shouted out loud. Then we tried it in groups of three. There were seven of us altogether. One of them was driving.
(explain how you felt about it) I felt great. My fears vanished. It was a memorable experience. Now that I have gained deep insight into a car with a sunroof, I can advise anyone who wants to buy one.

VOCABULARY

Sunroof (noun) - a panel in the roof of a car that can be opened for extra ventilation.
Eg: He bought a brand new car with a sunroof.

Mountain (noun) - a large natural elevation of the earth's surface rising abruptly from the surrounding level; a large steep hill.
Eg: He was afraid to drive on the mountains.

Chill ran down my spine (phrase) - used to say that someone feels very thrilled, frightened, etc.
Eg: A chill ran down her spine as she entered the exam hall.

Peeped (verb) - look quickly and furtively at something, especially through a narrow opening.
Eg: She peeped in through the narrow entrance.

Nervous (adj) - easily agitated or alarmed.
Eg: She became nervous on seeing the operation theatre.

Part 3

1. Why do people need to travel every day?



(Give a direct answer to the question) They travel for several reasons. **(Explain your reason or reasons)** The majority of people travel for work. Also, some people travel to buy daily needs like dairy, grocery, etc. People also travel to meet their friends and relatives.

2. Some people say that daily journeys like these will not be so common in the future. Do you agree or disagree? Why?
(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) Yes, with the ever-advancing technology, companies are heading towards work from home. You will have official meetings conducted online, and physical presence will no longer be required. So, this will largely reduce the daily journeys people make.

3. Can travel make a positive difference to the economy of a country? How?
(Give a direct answer to the question) Yes, travel can make a positive impact on the economy. **(Explain your reason or reasons)** Notably, there will be a boom in tourism. When it attracts a large number of tourists, it will slowly create opportunities for foreign settlement areas. This will directly impact the foreign relationships with that country, which improves trade agreements, thereby bringing a positive difference to the country's economy.

4. Is it a good thing that everyone owns cars?
(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) In advanced countries, everyone owns a car. But it is not good for the environment, and it becomes difficult to regulate traffic as well. Roads become crowded. Besides being a sign of an improved economy of a country, it does not carry any other benefit.

5. Do many families own private cars in your country?
(Give a direct answer to the question) Yes, some families do. **(Explain your reason or reasons)** But the trend seems to be positive. It is estimated that many families would own private cars soon. Many people have stable jobs in our country, and hence there is a significant improvement in the lifestyle as well.

VOCABULARY

Daily needs (noun) - The fact of being necessary or indispensable; indispensability
Eg: He found a one-stop store for all his daily needs.

Impact (noun) - a marked effect or influence.
Eg: The saint's words made an impact on the crowd.

Agreements (noun) - a negotiated and typically legally binding arrangement between parties as to a course of action.
Eg: There was an agreement signed between the two countries on the trade of spices.

Regulate (verb) - control (something, especially a business activity) by means of rules and regulations.
Eg: The council regulates the operation of the institute.

Lifestyle (noun) - the way in which a person lives.
Eg: Yoga made a positive impact on his lifestyle.

13. Describe a city you have visited and want to go back to in the future

You should say,

- **which city it is**
- **where it is**
- **what you did there**
- **And explain why you want to go back**

(which city it is) (where it is) I can say that I have travelled to quite a lot of places. Every summer vacation, we used to go on a trip within India. After I graduated, I moved to the UK and have been to several places here. But there is a sweet haunting city in India, which refuses to move out of my memory. It is Calcutta. Be it patriotism or culture or spirituality; it stands apart. From Rabindranath Tagore to Saurav Ganguly to Satyajit Ray, it has carved a niche for itself in every field. I have visited the city with my parents and friends.
(what you did there) I don't go to Calcutta as a regular tourist. I go with the aim of exploring something, and it turns out to be marvellous expeditions. First time I went there with my parents, my project was exploring Shantiniketan. I was amazed at the concept of open-air learning. I appreciated the fact that a free mind learns better. Later I visited the same city with my friends when I was in college. This time I explored the Missionaries of charity. I got an autograph from the then Superior General.
(explain why you want to go back) It keeps calling me time and again. I have always wondered why. But I'm not able to find an answer to the question. It may be my passion for History that drives me mad to visit this place often.

VOCABULARY

Travelled (adj) - having travelled to many places. [Travel- verb : make a journey, typically of some length]
Eg: He was widely travelled and was very wise.

Haunting (adj) - bringing strong images, memories, or feelings to mind.
Eg: He had haunting memories of his first wife.

Carved a niche (phrase) - Succeeding, achieving and fulfilling, accomplish.
Eg: She carved a niche for herself in the Literary field.

Passion (noun) - strong and barely controllable emotion
Eg: She had a passion for physics.

Part 3

1. What are some of the problems of long-distance travelling?
(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) Whether you are travelling alone by car or train, you tend to get bored after a while. But if you are travelling with a group of people, be it, friends or family, it makes the travel lively. If in a car, you can plan on the kind of music



you need to play while travelling. If there are older people in the group, you need to know how to keep the travel engaging so that they forget their health problems and enjoy the trip.

2. Has the way people travel changed over the last few decades?

(Give a direct answer to the question) Yes, it has changed a lot. **(Explain your reason or reasons)** The lifestyle of people has improved, and so has the economy of the country. Flight rates have come down, and there are luxury trains and buses introduced. So people travel with better comfort compared to yesteryears.

3. What is the best way to save money while travelling?

(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) The best way is to research on the internet. You can compare prices between flights, trains, and buses and decide which is the cheapest mode of transport to a particular destination. Also, you need to plan much ahead of travel, so that tickets are available in all modes of transport. Sometimes there may be offers, which may expire if you book tickets at the last moment.

4. What kind of tourist destinations do you usually prefer?

(Give a direct answer to the question) I prefer places with a historical background. **(Explain your reason or reasons)** I love to explore the work of our ancestors and take a photocopy of all of them. I prefer to go to Konark Sun temple in Odisha, to the jungles in Karnataka, to Rani Gayatri Devi's Palace in Jaipur, TajMahal in Agra, to name a few. All of them have a rich history associated with them. I got to know about these places from books, newspapers, and magazines.

5. Has a foreign visitor ever stayed at your home?

(Give a direct answer to the question) No, not until now. But I look forward to it, and it will be exciting to have a foreign visitor. **(Explain your reason or reasons)** The main reason would be because of the number of ideas we can exchange. I will guide him/her about places in India and get to know places of special interest in his or her country. It is exciting when I think of it.

VOCABULARY

Bored (adj) - feeling weary and impatient because one is unoccupied or lacks interest in one's current activity.
Eg: Tom got bored with playing tennis.

Lively (adj) - intellectually stimulating or perceptive, full of life and energy.
Eg: Sita made the conversation lively.

Luxury (noun)- a state of great comfort or elegance, especially when involving great expense.
Eg: There was a new luxury bus introduced from Punjab to Pakistan.

To name a few (idiom) - To provide only a few examples, though there are copious amounts from which to choose.
Eg: There are many problems in this house. To name a few, the lights are not decorative; there is leakage in the pipes, and there are a lot of mosquitoes.

Eager (adj) - strongly wanting to do or have something.
Eg: The kids were very eager to receive their gifts.



14. Describe a place you visited that has been affected by pollution.

You should say:

- **where it is**
- **what kind of pollution it has**
- **what causes pollution**
- **And explain how you feel about that place**

(where it is) A thing of beauty is a joy forever. But it would not be joyful to see the beauty fade in front of your eyes. It so happened to me with the pink city Jaipur in India. It is no more pink. It has turned to some sort of a shade of orange.
(what kind of pollution it has) (what causes pollution) The report published by the World Health Organisation attributes the majority of pollution to the improper channelling of energy from industry and transport sectors, coal-fuelled power plants, desert dust and burning of wastes. The air quality index in Jaipur has come down. The place which was once the abode of English Royals is now strewn with garbage. There are no proper arrangements to sort and dispose of it. There are no strict rules in place for open air emissions. There are no programs to shift to cleaner options for electricity and discontinue the use of coal. The negligence from the government has given the city a pathetic look.
(explain how you feel about that place) I was heartbroken. It did not feel good to see the city in ruins. I was so enraged that I wrote a column in the local newspaper to control the air pollution in Jaipur. I vented out with my friends. I'm hoping that the city will return to its royal pink very soon.

VOCABULARY

Fade (verb) - gradually grow faint and disappear.
Eg: The light faded and there was darkness all over.

Air quality index (phrase) - index for reporting how clean or polluted your air is, and what associated health effects might be a concern for you. For each of these pollutants, EPA has established national air quality standards to protect public health.
Eg: Before moving to a new place it is better to check the air quality index of the place.

Strewn (adj) - untidily scattered
Eg: The place was strewn with dried flowers.

Heartbroken (adj) - suffering from overwhelming distress.
Eg: She was heartbroken on hearing the death news.

Part 3

1. Why do people throw waste materials on roads?
(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) I think it is due to their laziness and lack of moral responsibility towards safeguarding the environment and the beauty of the city. A large number of people are ignorant about what they are doing to the environment.

2. How can the government encourage people to keep their city clean?
(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) They can conduct awareness programs. The program must reach all kinds of people in a city. They can make advertisements and as well as circulate videos on YouTube and Facebook. The program should tell



the people the current state of the city. Also, it must project how the city will look like in another ten years if they do and don't follow cleanliness standards.

3. What do you think? Is it a good idea or a bad idea to establish limited factories in a city?
(Give a direct answer to the question) It is a very good idea to restrict the number of factories in a city. **(Explain your reason or reasons)** As the government is responsible for reducing global warming effects, controlling pollution, and maintaining the air quality index in a place, they should enforce strict rules in place regarding the establishment of factories.

4. What kinds of pollution are serious in your country?
(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) We have almost all kinds of pollution. Air pollution is due to fuel emissions by vehicles and factories. Water pollution is caused when factories let out their waste products to nearby water bodies.

5. What can individuals do to protect our environment?
(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) As the literacy rate is increasing, most of them are aware of the disaster caused by plastics. So, they can shift to some environmentally friendly products. Now that the government has officially banned it, people have no choice. But even otherwise, any small effort towards protecting the environment should be voluntarily taken by every individual like not littering on roads and using eco-friendly modes of transport.

VOCABULARY

Moral responsibility (noun) - the status of morally deserving praise, blame, reward, or punishment for an act or omission performed or neglected in accordance with one's moral obligations. Deciding what counts as "morally obligatory" is a principal concern of ethics.
Eg: Everyone has moral responsibility towards reducing global warming.

Standards (noun) - a level of quality or attainment.
Eg: Ram had set high standards for the project.

Enforce (verb) - cause (something) to happen by necessity or force.
Eg: The sports committee enforced strict laws for its players.

Literacy (noun) - the ability to read and write.
Eg: Kerala is a state which has a high literacy rate.

Disaster (noun) - an event or fact that has unfortunate consequences.
Eg: There are many disasters caused by releasing industrial effluents into water bodies.

15. Describe a crowded place you have been to.

You should say,

- **where it was**
- **when you went there**
- **why it was crowded**
- **and explain how you felt about the place.**



(where it was) (when you went there) Soon after my graduation, I got a job in Bangalore. I stayed in a hostel in BTM in Bangalore. On the weekend, my friends and I decided to explore Commercial street. We travelled by bus. It was more than an hour's travel from BTM to Commercial street. The street is famous for selling a variety of things ranging from clothing, footwear, jewellery and electronics. I have read about it in the papers but experienced the real crowd that afternoon. I was almost squeezed. I managed to follow my friends, who moved aimlessly. We halted at a food joint to have pani puri. By the time I put the puri on my mouth, I was hit ruthlessly by a stout, tall person. My puri fell on the ground.
(why it was crowded) Later I learnt that the place contained only 75 parking slots for four-wheelers which causes the area to become very crowded, especially on weekends.
(explain how you felt about that place) Since it was afternoon, the street was bustling with activity. It is true that you get to shop on a variety of things, but you have to bear the crowd. It is easy to get lost. One must be careful about one's belongings. I enjoyed it, though. The place was very entertaining. Time just flew. It was hard for us to realise that it was evening. One of my friends was smart enough to find her way through the crowd, and we followed suit.

VOCABULARY
Street (noun) - a public road in a city, town, or village, typically with houses and buildings on one or both sides.
Eg: The streets in his place were very narrow.

Crowd (noun) - a large number of people gathered together in a disorganized or unruly way.
Eg: He got hurt due to the stampede in the crowd.

Squeezed (verb) - manage to get into or through a narrow or restricted space.
Eg: John squeezed in beside Jim.

Ruthlessly (adverb) - without pity or compassion for others.
Eg: He was treated ruthlessly by his friends who lent him money.

Entertaining (adj) - providing enjoyment
Eg: Fredrick was an entertaining companion.

Part 3

1. Is there a completely quiet place?
(Give a direct answer to the question) There are many such places. **(Explain your reason or reasons)** There are quite a lot of hills and mountains which are calm. Also, there are places in the city, like museums and libraries, where it is very peaceful. Also, I have observed that post office hour the residential areas remain calm and quiet. For example, my colony is very quiet from 10:00 to 12:00 PM.

2. What are the places which attract many people in your country?
(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) There are places like Chandni Chowk in Delhi, Commercial street in Bangalore, which attract a lot of people. There are a variety of products being sold in these places and people from all strata of society find some store which suits their expectations.

3. What kind of places do people want to go to when they want to be alone?



(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) When they want to be alone, people usually go to meditation halls. Some people find their homes to be the best places to spend time alone. Some of them like to drive to a nearby lake or hill where it is very serene. These places allow people to think better.

4. Do people like to go to crowded places? Why or why not?
(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) Well, it depends on the person. It also depends on the income of the person. There are posh areas which are not crowded and where goods are sold at a higher price. But not everyone can afford it. So, the low and middle-income groups tend to go to places where things are affordable and don't bother about the crowd.

5. Is there a place in your country which is overpopulated?
(Give a direct answer to the question) I think it is Mumbai. **(Explain your reason or reasons)** It is commonly believed that anyone can earn a living in Mumbai. There are several businesses thriving in that area. So, people from different parts of the country flock to Mumbai.

VOCABULARY

Residential area (noun) - is a land used in which housing predominates, as opposed to industrial and commercial areas. These include single-family housing, multi-family residential, or mobile homes.
Eg: There are many residential areas near ABC mall.

Strata (noun) - a level or class to which people are assigned according to their social status, education, or income.
Eg: Their behavior is poor because they are members of other social strata.

Posh (adj) - elegant or stylishly luxurious
Eg: Leela Palace is a posh hotel.

Afford (verb) - have enough money to pay for.
Eg: I could afford to live only in a single bedroom.

Thriving (adj) - prosperous and growing; flourishing.
Eg: Tim had a thriving umbrella business in the west of the City.

16. Describe a school you went to in your childhood

You should say,

- **where it was**
- **What it was like**
- **What the teachers were like**
- **and explain how you felt about it.**

(where it was) (what it was like) The first thing that strikes you when you talk about childhood is your school. I studied in “ABC Matriculation”, Chennai. It was one of the top schools in the area. The school was in CIT Nagar, Chennai, which was a kerala settlement. The school had a huge square area of concrete road at the entrance with a stage at its end. There were also tall Ashoka trees near the



entrance. There were separate buildings for primary and secondary students. **(what the teachers were like)** Most of the high school teachers were kerala christians. For pre primary classes, we had Anglo Indian teachers. The Vice-Principal was from Calcutta. Great importance was given to English. The teachers were dedicated to their work. Be it Science or Math or English, the classes were very interesting. The teachers were skilled in their respective fields. Apart from Academics, they encouraged students to participate in skits, elocutions and dramas. We also had science exhibitions, once in a year. They created an atmosphere, very conducive to learning. **(explain how you felt about it)** I feel proud to have studied at ABC. After schooling, when I was thrown out into the world, I realized the importance of English. My teachers were right in emphasizing its importance, from childhood. I feel blessed to have attended this school. I owe all my achievements to my dear teachers.

VOCABULARY
Childhood (noun) - the state or period of being a child.
Eg: He spent most of his childhood with his grandmother.

Primary school (noun) - a school for children between the ages of about five and eleven.
Eg: There was a primary school being established in Dehradun

Secondary school (noun) - a high school or a school of corresponding grade, ranking between a primary school and a college or university.
Eg: Jim was required to fill details of marks secured in his secondary school, in his college application.

Owe (verb) - be under a moral obligation to give someone (gratitude, respect, etc.).
Eg: She owed a lot to her mother.

Part 3

1. What is the difference between being taught by teachers and being taught by AI?
(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) AI or Artificial Intelligence has its advantages. Through AI education is made possible in remote corners of the world. But a teacher has unique qualities that AI cannot replace. Teachers can give individual attention to a student and identify his/her weak and strong areas. But AI will just let the student know if his answer is right or wrong.

2. What's the difference between the present and the past teachers?
(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) In ancient times, India had the Gurukul system where a student stays in the Gurukula or Ashram as a hosteler without paying any fee but offering services. The Guru was treated with great respect, and they got trained in almost all aspects of life. (Give an example) For example, students would not only be trained in studies but also archery, boxing, etc. But in the present day, schools are money minded and teachers too. They teach for what they are paid. Students also are not very affectionate towards them.

3. What are the most common types of schools in India?
(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) In India, there are many types of schools. Most common among them are the CBSE or Central Board of Secondary Education, ICSE or Indian Certificate of Secondary Education, IB or Indian Baccalaureate, and Matriculation systems.



4. Which do you think is more important: primary school education or university education?
(Give a direct answer to the question) Undoubtedly, it is a primary school education. **(Explain your reason or reasons)** It lays the foundation for a student. A student may or may not be able to pursue University education. But it is mandatory to know how to read and write without errors and know the basic concepts of Mathematics and Science, failing which survival would become very difficult.

5. Do you think young people today are burdened with study?
(Give a direct answer to the question) Yes**. (Explain your reason or reasons)** But it is because the world is getting very competitive and they need that syllabi to cope with the world. It is true that they are burdened, but there is no choice. They have to go through this to be able to become successful citizens of the world.

VOCABULARY

Artificial intelligence(noun) - the theory and development of computer systems able to perform tasks normally requiring human intelligence, such as visual perception, speech recognition decision-making, and translation between languages.
Eg: Nowadays, Artificial Intelligence is used in agriculture and farming.

Gurukula(noun) - a type of education system in ancient India with shishya ('students' or 'disciples') living near or with the Guru, in the same house. The word gurukula is a combination of the Sanskrit words guru ('teacher' or 'master') and kula ('family' or 'home').
Eg: It is believed that Gurukulas of ancient times were far more superior than IITs of today.

Archery (noun) - shooting with a bow and arrows, especially at a target as a sport.
Eg: John was skilled in archery.

Foundation (noun) - an underlying basis or principle.
Eg: Einstein's principles laid the foundation for modern physics.

Cope (verb) - (of a person) deal effectively with something difficult.
Eg: The doctor gave tips on how to cope with stress.

17. Describe a place where you read and write(not your home).

You should say,

- **where it is**
- **how often you go there**
- **what you do there**
- **and explain how you feel about this place.**

(where it is) Though I prefer to read and write at the comfort of my home, I do have one other interesting place which is the Leeds Garden near my house. I usually go there at twilight when there are none. The garden has got securities operating both at night and day. So It is a safe place. **(how often you go there) (what you do there)** I go there whenever I get up early. That is the best time to write poetry. I consider poetry to be a sudden outpour of thoughts. I should feel the urge in my



hands. Whenever I visit this garden, the little flowers on the wayside seem to whisper something to me. The sweet fragrance of flowers from various trees is inviting. I choose a corner where there is a cemented chair which is surrounded by enchanting Ixora flowers. Mostly, I write poetry. The atmosphere makes me want to write one. Thoughts come one after the other in some order, and I pen them all. Later, when I look at it, I would be amazed at where the words and ideas originated from. Whenever I read a book on which the theme would be set in some English Village, the garden will seem like one. I will get absorbed in the book.
(explain how you feel about this place) I think it is a magical place. It can change your mind. Creativity would pour in. The silence of the place at twilight is something divine and ideal for reading and writing poetry.

VOCABULARY
Twilight (noun) - The soft glowing light from the sky when the sun is below the horizon, caused by the reflection of the sun's rays from the atmosphere.
Eg: She stepped out at twilight.

Garden (noun) - a piece of ground adjoining a house, in which grass, flowers, and shrubs may be grown.
Eg: Tom gifted us Roses from his garden

Outpour (verb) - To pour out
Eg: There was an outpour of sympathy in Ram as he looked at the poor people in the Ashram.

Enchanting (adj) - delightfully charming or attractive.
Eg: The distant blue sky was an enchanting view.

Divine (adj) - very pleasing; delightful
Eg: He had a divine smile.

Part 3

1. At what age children start reading and writing?
(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) Children start reading and writing at the early age of 3. Some parents begin teaching even before that. Nowadays, playschools start accepting admissions at the age of two. Children are taught craftwork and basic arithmetic skills. Children are often taught with the help of toys, which makes learning fun to them.

2. What is more important, reading, or writing?
(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) Well, I think you must be able to read to write. They are intertwined. The first word a kid writes is what he learnt, probably in their own spellings. Reading improves writing. At a later stage, it is writing that builds confidence.

3. Who needs to have good writing skills?
(Give a direct answer to the question) Almost everyone in the world. **(Explain your reason or reasons)** Everyone should know how to read and write a letter or compose an email, which is the basis of communication. It is a wrong notion that only poets or people involved in the literary world need writing skills. Writing improves thinking, which results in better expression. Writing paves, the way for better learning.

4. From what can people get more information – words or pictures?
(Give a direct answer to the question) I think it is pictures. **(Explain your reason or reasons)** People tend to infer more from pictures than from words. But there is a hidden danger with pictures. People can interpret it in their own ways, which would often cause misunderstanding. **(Give an example)** For example, when looking at modern art, the artist might have created it with some perception, but the person who looks at it may perceive it differently. Whereas writing is precise, and its interpretations cannot vary.

5. Is it the sole responsibility of the school to take care of reading and writing?
(Give a direct answer to the question) It is indeed true that children learn to write and read at school. But parents should take equal responsibility. **(Explain your reason or reasons)** In fact, it is at home that a child begins to scribble and later moves on to better versions of writing. So, it is the responsibility of parents to take care of the reading and writing of a child. School comes in at a later stage.

VOCABULARY

Playschool (noun) - a playgroup.
Eg: Seema put her two-year-old child in a play school.

Intertwined (verb) - connect or link (two or more things) closely.
Eg: Fact and fiction are intertwined in that novel.

Notion (noun) - a conception of or belief about something.
Eg: Sita and Ram had different notions of right and wrong.

Infer (verb) - deduce or conclude (something) from evidence and reasoning rather than from explicit statements.
Eg: From Galileo's theory, we can infer that it is earth that revolves around the sun.

Scribble (verb) - write or draw (something) carelessly or hurriedly.
Eg: Tom scribbled the equations in his notebook.

18. Describe an interesting place you remember well that was full of colours.

You should say,

- **where it was**
- **what it was like**
- **why you went there**
- **and explain why you remember it well.**

(where it was) When I was in second grade, I travelled to Mumbai to meet my cousins. Since I was in second grade, my exams were over by the 10th of March.
(what it was like) (why you went there) We travelled in a first-class train, and I was excited to meet my cousins. On reaching there, I saw floors decorated with rangolis. Later, I learnt that the reason was the fast-approaching Holi. My cousins were living on the 10th floor of a multi storeyed building and had friends all over the place. They made grand preparations. Every time, I went out, I saw people standing in groups and talking about Holi.



At last, the much awaited day arrived. I got dressed up and went out with my cousins. My cousins were being pulled by their friends and sprayed with different colours, and they did not spare me either. They put all sorts of colours on my face, and the whole place turned colourful. The walls contained all the VIBGYOR colours. The floor was filled with colourful sprays. I was not able to figure out anyone because they had colours on their face. The whole earth seemed colourful to me. **(explain why you remember it well)** When I returned home, I saw my face in the mirror. My face was red and yellow and violet and blue. My frock, which was a dark green, had been sprayed deep indigo. When I looked out of the balcony, the air was coloured. I felt I was breathing in yellow and breathing out green. I'd never seen anything so colourful as the Holi.
I enjoyed it to the fullest and carried home warm memories of Holi. I remember it till date. I have preserved that green frock which was sprayed with indigo. I didn't allow my mum to wash it. It is still lying in the corner of my wardrobe.

VOCABULARY
Rangolis (noun) - traditional Indian decoration and patterns made with ground rice, particularly during festivals.
Eg: Sita learnt to draw new Rangolis.

VIBGYOR (adj) - the sequence of hues commonly described as making up a rainbow.
Eg: Rainbow consists of VIBGYOR colours.

Sprays (noun) - liquid that is blown or driven through the air in the form of tiny drops.
Eg: Sita used organic pesticide sprays to protect her plants.

Frock (noun) - a woman's or girl's dress.
Eg: Tina bought a new frock.

Part 3

1. What colours are commonly used for the decoration of people's homes?
(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) Nowadays, people tend to decorate their homes with Feng Shui colours. **(Give an example)** For example, Fengshui emphasizes colours based on directions. On the other hand, the painter would suggest colours that can reflect light. Generally, people tend to paint their kitchens in shades of red or orange. Living rooms will be painted with lighter shades such as pale white or pale yellow.

2. Can colour have any influence on people and their mood?
(Give a direct answer to the question) Definitely, yes. **(Explain your reason or reasons)** I've read it in books. There is psychology behind painting bedrooms, living rooms in soft, light colours and kitchens with vibrant colours. Colours have an impact on our mood. **(Give an example)** For example, kitchens are often painted in shades of red or orange because it is an area of high activity. Bedrooms are for relaxation and sleep and hence painted with light colours.

3. What colours are important when people buy things?
(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) I don't think there aren't any hard and fast rules regarding colours when buying things. It depends on the person's mood at that particular time. **(Give an example)** For example, when shopping for clothes, people tend to choose dull pastel colours for office wear and bright ones for parties.

4. Is colour really important in advertisements?
(Give a direct answer to the question) Undoubtedly, yes. **(Explain your reason or reasons)** You have to attract people and colours are the best means by which it could be done. Eye-catchy colours are the first thing that attracts a person to a product. It is only later that they look into the product specifications. Generally, art directors working in advertisements use colours which are appealing to the masses.

5. Are pictures in textbooks really important?
(Give a direct answer to the question) Yes. **(Explain your reason or reasons)** There is a concept called pictorial learning. It helps the mind to imagine better. **(Give an example)** For example, if the textbook has a passage on roses, it would be better to have a picture of them. This way, preference increases for the textbook, which will increase the sales factor.

VOCABULARY

Reflect (verb) - (of a surface or body) throwback (heat, light, or sound) without absorbing it.
Eg: Glass surfaces usually reflect light.

Psychology (noun) - the scientific study of the human mind and its functions, especially those affecting behavior in a given context.
Eg: Flowers affect human physiology.

Hard and fast rule (adj) - indicating that there are no fixed or definite rules or facts.
Eg: The manager has no hard and fast rules, so his employees don't finish the work on time.

Pastel (noun) - a soft and delicate shade of a colour.
Eg: Lolita picked up dresses with dull pastel colours.

Advertisements (noun) - a notice or announcement in a public medium promoting a product, service, or event or publicizing a job vacancy.
Eg: There are huge advertisements for the new product of ABC company.

19. Describe a historical building you have visited

You should say,

- **where it is**
- **what it looks like**
- **why you went there**
- **and explain how you felt about this historical building**

(where it is) (what it looks like) India has a rich blend of eastern and western constructions. One such source of admiration is the Taj Mahal in Agra. On the exterior , it has rich calligraphy of persian poems, abstract forms and vegetative motifs. Passages from the Holy Quran are inscribed all over the complex. On the interior, it has exquisite flower carvings and intricate pierce works in marble.



(why you went there) My friends and I got tired of the monotony of life. We wanted some escape from the daily routine. So we planned for a trip to Agra and explored the iconic TajMahal. TajMahal was built by ShahJahan in memory of his wife Mumtaz. It stands as a testimony to the Mughal architecture. We arranged for a guide who told us that materials for construction of TajMahal were bought from across the world. He told us that twenty eight types of precious stones were studded on the white marble and that the total cost of construction was estimated to be thirty two million rupees.

(explain how you felt about this historical building) While I was there, I could not take my eyes off the building. It was a Mahal of love built out of love. It seemed to spread vibes of love all around. I was wondering where they derived the inspiration from. We took a lot of photographs in the evening and I treasure them all. On our way back to the hotel, I purchased a tiny plastic doll of TajMahal which I have placed in my reading room.

VOCABULARY

Calligraphy (noun) - the art of producing decorative handwriting or lettering with a pen or brush.
Eg: She watched the sculptor carving beautiful calligraphy.

Motifs (noun) - a decorative image or design, especially a repeated one forming a pattern.
Eg: The sofa in John's house had prints of colourful motifs.

Monotony (noun) - lack of variety and interest; tedious repetition and routine.
Eg: Kim was tired of the monotony of being a software Engineer.

Studded (adj) - decorated or augmented with studs [a large-headed piece of metal that pierces and projects from a surface, especially for decoration.]
Eg: The wedding invitation was studded with colourful metal pieces.

Part 3

1. What kind of buildings are popular in India in the present time?
(Give a direct answer to the question) Tall skyscrapers. **(Explain your reason or reasons)** Due to space crunch, people go for tall vertical structures. Independent houses are demolished and are replaced with tall multi-storey buildings. Builders are also promoting these types of buildings.

2. Compare old buildings and modern buildings. Which out of the two people prefer to live in?
(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) Old buildings are spacious, well ventilated, and well lit. New buildings offer these features moderately. People are not given a choice. Due to the demands of the current situation, people tend to opt for modern buildings.

3. How do people in India feel about old buildings?
(Give a direct answer to the question) Overall, the trend is positive. **(Explain your reason or reasons)**. They are moving towards preserving old buildings. Just like in foreign countries, where houses of poets and Scientists are preserved as museums, India has also taken steps towards it. Many people are interested in History, and hence they want to preserve the old buildings and view them as symbols of national pride.

4. Do older people and young people in India have the same attitudes towards old buildings?
(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) There is a mixed opinion among the youth. Some of them who have been taught by their ancestors on the importance of old



buildings or are interested in History want to preserve their heritage. Others don't value it so much. Older people are reminiscent of old buildings.

5. Is it important to design a plan for a building?
(Give a direct answer to the question) Undoubtedly, yes. **(Explain your reason or reasons)** It is very important to make a plan because it lays the foundation for constructing buildings. A plan can be circulated for approval and, if rejected, can be modified. All major constructions have a plan.

VOCABULARY

Skyscrapers (noun) - a very tall building of many storeys.
Eg: Skyscrapers are very common in New York city.

Ventilated (verb) - cause air to enter and circulate freely in (a room, building, etc.).
Eg: Paul's new house was well-ventilated.

Moderately (adv) - to a certain extent; quite; fairly.
Eg: He was moderately successful as an actor.

Mixed opinions (noun) - some people say they like it or agree with it, but others dislike it or disagree with it.
Eg: People had mixed opinions about the government's military agreement with ABC country.

Reminiscent (adj) - tending to remind one of something.
Eg: On seeing his old school, Tim's grandfather grew reminiscent.

20. Describe a friend who is a good leader

You should say,

- **who this person is**
- **how you know them**
- **how they behaved**
- **and explain why you think they are a good leader**

(who this person is) (how you know them) Some people are born influential. They have a knack of dealing with people. I believe it is inborn. Of course, there are classes conducted to inculcate leadership qualities, but not everybody becomes one. My friend in school, Susan had some special qualities, and I always admired her. We became friends from sixth grade. Her parents worked for the Central Government and were deputed to the southern part of India. So, she joined our school.'
(how they behaved) She was exceptional. She was very sincere in her studies and was also very good at tennis and kho kho. Infact, she was the captain of the kho kho team. She was very helpful and was always ready to lend her notebooks when someone who was on leave asked for them. When students struggling in math approached her, she would gladly help. She never lied. She also helped the teachers carry the pile of notebooks to the staff room. She was appointed as the leader of the class. We became thick friends and are in touch till date.
(explain why you think they are a good leader) If someone could become a leader of a class in sixth grade, they could definitely become the school pupil leader in twelfth grade, and she did become one, but in another school. She could motivate people and get things done from them. She was a



doer with a positive attitude. If someone could be a leader of a school, I believe that they can definitely climb the leadership ladder in any field that they choose.

VOCABULARY
Influential (adj) - having great influence on someone or something.
Eg: Tony was a very influential person in ABC company.

Inborn (adj) - natural to a person or animal.
Eg: Linda had an inborn talent for painting.

Captain (noun) - the leader of a team, especially in sports.
Eg: Jane was the captain of the basketball team.

Doer (noun) - a person who acts rather than merely talking or thinking.
Eg: Jack was a doer.

Leadership (noun) - the action of leading a group of people or an organization.
Eg: She soon reached the leadership position in ABC company.

Part 3

1. Who is the head of the family in your culture?
(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) Generally, the oldest male is the head of the family. But in cases of death of the male, the oldest female becomes the head.

2. Are men better at decision making in a family?
(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) Usually, older people are considered to be good at making decisions because of their experience and wisdom. It includes older men and women in the family. Also, there is no scientific evidence that men are good decision-makers. Women are equally good at making good decisions. In fact, it depends on how much knowledge they have on a particular topic. **(Give an example)** For example, if the wife is a chartered accountant, she may make better decisions w.r.t making investments.

3. Do you think that in the future there will be more women leaders?
(**Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons)** Women are indeed encouraged more. As society is supportive, there may be more women leaders. Also, there are reservations for women in every field. **(Give an example)** For example, corporate companies and major investment banks have made it mandatory to have at least a few women leaders on board.

4. Should a leader discuss with team members when making decisions?
(Give a direct answer to the question) Yes, of course**. (Explain your reason or reasons)** Every team member must be consulted before arriving at a conclusion. But the leader should also have a hold on his/her team members. The leader must not let anyone dominate him. The leader's decision should be final; however, the opposition it may face. In fact, the leader should be able to convince everyone.

5. How do you see a leader now and in the future?
(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) Leadership qualities remain the same, whether it is past, present, or future. A good leader will have admirable traits like honesty,



integrity, helpfulness. So, there would not be much difference between leaders now and in the future. In fact, as we take examples from leaders of our past, so would the future generations.

Vocabulary:

Wisdom (noun) - the quality of having experience, knowledge, and good judgement; the quality of being wise.
Eg: He listened to his grandfather's words of wisdom.

Topic (noun) - a matter dealt with in a text, discourse, or conversation; a subject.
Eg: She spoke spontaneously on the topic given.

Reservations (noun) - the action of reserving something. [Reserving (verb) - arrange for (a room, seat, ticket, etc.) to be kept for the use of a particular person].
Eg: Some colleges have reservations for scheduled tribes.

Have a hold (phrase) - Have a controlling influence over.
Eg: Ashley's father had a hold on her.

Convince (verb) - persuade (someone) to do something.
Eg: The doctor convinced the patient for surgery.

21. Describe the person you spend the most time with

You should say,

- **who this person is?**
- **what kind of person he or she is?**
- **what you usually do together**
- **and explain why you spend the most time with this person.**

(who this person is) I love my Dad. I spend the most time with him. Though I have moved to the UK, after my graduation, we exploit the internet to the fullest. I chat with him on WhatsApp, Skype and also over a prepaid calling card.
(what kind of person he or she is) He is a warm person full of love for me. Though he is friendly, he never hesitated to advise me on important things. He would be so kind to the extent that he won't even hurt the ants that bit him hard. He never pressured me to score high marks. His helping tendency was well known in our area. He always got the best things for me, from bags to dresses and books.
(what you usually do together) We used to take long walks and play carrom whenever we got together. He did pay a visit to the UK. But I could see that he had become old. Though he couldn't walk for a long time, he never complained about it. He was careful not to let me know of his illnesses. But I figured out that his left arm had a problem.
(explain why you spend the most time with this person) He is my friend and guide. I feel easy to confide anything with him. He would advise me from the bottom of his heart. His sense of humour would lighten even the toughest moment. I used to talk to him about my career plans and get his opinion on it. As a retired banker, he taught me how to invest money. And the list is never-ending.

VOCABULARY
Friendly (adj) - kind and pleasant.
Eg: Ken was a friendly person.



Complained (verb) - express dissatisfaction or annoyance about something.
Eg: Sara always complained of the chilliness during winters.

Confide (verb) - tell someone about a secret or private matter while trusting them not to repeat it to others.
Eg: The boss confided the company secrets with Jim.

Sense of humour (noun) - a person's ability to perceive humour or appreciate a joke.
Eg: Tom had a great sense of humour.

Part 3

1. How many generations usually live together in India?
(**Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons)**India did have a joint family system where up to three generations lived together. But it is no more in place. The latest trend is parents living in India and children living in foreign countries. After the death of one parent, the other lives separately or joins their children abroad. In cases where the children are in India, they choose an apartment near their companies, which would usually be on the outskirts of the city, while the parents will be living separately in their home in the city or town.

2. Is it important to visit family members?
(Give a direct answer to the question) Yes, it is very much important to visit family members.
(Explain your reason or reasons) Maintaining a bond with the family members is essential because the family defines our identity. They are very supportive during tough times.

3. What are the values of family in your country?
(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) An Indian family is based on the core principle of sacrificing one's needs for the welfare of the family. Especially, the mother in the family is an embodiment of sacrifice. It is for this reason that women are regarded with great respect in India. There are also other values like respect for elders, affection towards siblings, etc.
(Give an example) For example, it is very common in India for an elder brother to contribute a major share for his sister's marriage. This would be considered as his duty and will not be repaid.

4. Why is family bonding necessary for happiness in life?
(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) It is family bonding that ensures happiness in life. The love and affection towards our family members will bestow a sense of security. It also gives us a sense of belongingness.

5. Do you think the support from a friend is different from the support from a family member?
(Give a direct answer to the question) Yes, it is different. **(Explain your reason or reasons)** There will be a reason for a friend to support you. It may be a win-win situation. But a family will offer support without expecting anything in return. So, support from a family is far more superior than support from a friend.

VOCABULARY

Joint family (noun) - (especially in India) an extended family, typically consisting of three or more generations and their spouses, living together as a single household.



Eg: Sneha married Kalpesh and was living in a joint family.

Tough times (noun) - Times of trouble, struggle, or unhappiness.
Eg: John had a tough time after quitting his job.

Sacrifice (noun) - The act of sacrificing something [sacrificing (verb) - give up (something valued) for the sake of other considerations].
Eg: Sita was aware of the sacrifices that her mother made.

Duty (noun) - a moral or legal obligation; a responsibility
Eg: Ram considered that it was his duty to provide good education to his children.

Win-win situation(noun) - one that is good for everyone who is involved
Eg: ABC company offered work from home facility because it was a win-win situation for the Company and its employees.

22. Describe a person who taught you something important

You should say,

- **who this person is**
- **how you know this person**
- **what this person taught you**
- **and explain why you thought this was important.**

(who this person is) (how you know this person) (what this person taught you) I have learnt something from every person I have met. One such interesting thing I learnt from my college mate Lakshmi is to draw mehndi designs. Though it seems simple, you have to work hard to learn the art of drawing minute designs on a human hand with a cone. There may be other perceptions, but I think it is one of the most important things I learnt.
(explain why you thought this was important) It was my cousin's wedding. She had arranged for a beautician to help her and others with decoration. The wedding was in Dubai. We planned to reach there early in the morning. But due to flight delays, we reached only at 8:00 AM. The beautician was busy draping the wedding saree to my cousin and did not even look at me. I waited. But after draping the saree, she began adjusting the makeup for my cousin. She never got satisfied. She did it over and over again. Time was running out. My cousin seemed to be in a world of her own. Nobody bothered to help me. So I began decorating on my own. I started drawing my own mehndi, which I learnt from Lakshmi. I put on some simple Arabic designs. It came out well. At the wedding, everyone appreciated me for my mehndi. Infact, my cousin's mum apologised to me for the behaviour of the beautician and gave me special gifts as well.

VOCABULARY
Mehndi (noun) - The English word for "Mehndi" is "Myrtle". It is a paste obtained from grinding the leaves of the Myrtle shrub. It is also called, "Henna" or "Heena".
Eg: Hasina was an expert in drawing mehndi designs.

Beautician (noun) - a person whose job is to give people beauty treatment
Eg: Shahnaz was a famous beautician in Delhi.



Drape (verb) - arrange (cloth or clothing) loosely or casually on or round something.
Eg: She draped a georgette saree on her own.

Makeup (noun) - cosmetics such as lipstick or powder applied to the face, used to enhance or alter the appearance
Eg: The actress wore heavy makeup.

Appreciated (verb) - recognize the full worth of.
Eg: The teacher appreciated the student for scoring full marks in maths.

Part 3

1. What qualities do you think a good teacher should have?
(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) A good teacher should be skilled in her field. He/She should concentrate more on children who don't perform well. They should be impartial and patient. They should pay individual attention to every student, understand their strengths and weaknesses, and encourage them to pursue their strengths. **(Give an example)** For example, a student who isn't good in academics may be talented in sports. The teacher must encourage the student to excel in sports.

2. Who do you think can learn better? Older people or youngsters?
(Give a direct answer to the question) In my opinion, youngsters can perform better**. (Explain your reason or reasons)** They are good at grasping things. Older people may have developed some health complications, which would make them take more time to learn something new. But again, it varies from person to person. Few older people are healthy and compete with young people in learning new things. But a majority of them learn slowly.

3. What do you think is the best age for children to go to school?
(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) I think 5 is the right age to admit a child to school. 3 or 4 would be too early for the young brain to learn Language and arithmetic. At 5, learning would not be a burden to them. They will look forward to going to school.

4. What do you think parents should teach their children?
(Give a direct answer to the question) Parents should teach moral values. **(Explain your reason or reasons)** They should be taught to share things with others, respect elders, be friendly, and be truthful. They should also train their children to get up on time, wear uniforms and shoes by themselves, keep things in the proper place after usage. They should also help with the homework.

5. Do you think children can learn anything from other children?
(Give a direct answer to the question) Yes, they do. **(Explain your reason or reasons) (Give an example)** For example, one of my friends' kids resisted drinking milk at home. But when a friend in the physical training class told him that he stayed active because of drinking milk, this kid also started drinking milk. Friends influence them more than their parents.

VOCABULARY

Impartial (Adj) - treating all rivals or disputants equally.
Eg: Judges are supposed to be impartial.

Majority (noun) - the greater number.
Eg: The political party won with a thumping majority.

Look forward (noun) - to feel pleased and excited about something that is going to happen
Eg: She looked forward to the birthday party.

Homework (noun) - schoolwork that a pupil is required to do at home.
Eg: The teacher told Seema that she must allow her child to do the homework on her own.

Resisted (verb) - try to prevent by action or argument.
Eg: The opposition resisted the government on its decision to provide subsidies to the poor.

23. Describe a person who is good at his or her job

You should say,

- **who this person is**
- **How do you know them**
- **What this person does**
- **And explain why this person is good at his / her job.**

(who this person is) (how do you know them) (what this person does) In every field, some people stand apart. My cousin is one such person. She is an English professor at the Holy Cross College, Bangalore. She was weak in math when she was in school. She never got disheartened because of it. She graduated in English Literature and pursued a Masters in it. She later finished her research and is now a visiting Professor at Harvard. She has got bright chances to settle abroad.
(explain why this person is good at her job) She works hard. She is innovative and creative. She has been a key factor in establishing a language lab at her college. She has also paid visits to many colleges within India and gained immense knowledge on the methodology of the study of the English Language. She has been to many schools and observed the students. She has produced many research papers on the language. She is very famous in her college among the student community. The one thing they admire in her is that she spends more time with people who struggle to learn the language. She conducts phonetics classes in the evening, for those interested. She also does social work by associating herself with the NGOs. They teach English to poor people, free of cost. She has taught English to children in the slums as well. Though many students don't opt for arts, she boldly pursued it and has proved herself in the field.

VOCABULARY
Professor (noun) - a teacher of the highest academic rank in a college or university, who has been awarded the title Professor in a particular branch of learning.
Eg: Raman was a Physics Professor at Stanford university.

Innovative (adj) - (of a person) introducing new ideas
Eg: Rex was famous as an innovative artist.

Admire (verb) - regard with respect or warm approval.
Eg: Indira Gandhi was admired for her courage.



Prove oneself (phrase) - to show that one is able to do something or to succeed.
Eg: Hilary proved herself in Politics.

Part 3

1. How should new workers perform in their first jobs?
(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) Be it any industry, new workers should work hard. They must be patient enough to learn the skills. They must be punctual. Nowadays, companies have smart cards to detect how many hours a person spends inside the premises. New workers should ensure that they don't default in all these areas. They should also be diligent in their work. Over a period of time, these qualities will help them to succeed.

2. How can workers improve their work performance?
(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) Workers must continuously upskill themselves. They must attend various training sessions related to their field. For example, a computer software professional must use the training and seminars that his/her Company offers. This will also help him/her to understand where they stand in terms of their technology. If there are any updates in their current technology, they must be aware of them.

3. What jobs are well paid in India?
(Give a direct answer to the question (Explain your reason or reasons) IT sectors and investment banks pay well. Nurses and teachers also receive a good pay package. Jobs that involve creativity, like designing and advertising, are also paid well. The marketing sector is also booming nowadays. So, there are chances that they might pay well.

4. What jobs are poorly paid in your country?
(Give a direct answer to the question) (Explain your reason or reasons) People who live on daily wages are not paid well. This includes people working in quarries, janitors, plumbers, electricians, workers who handle human waste, or sewage.

5. If someone is bored with their job, is it easy for them to change to a different job?
(Give a direct answer to the question) Absolutely, yes. **(Explain your reason or reasons)** There are so many opportunities nowadays. Also, there are a lot of companies. Especially, people in the IT sector switch jobs often. **(Give an example)** For example, my friend, who was working on Java for five years in a company, got bored with it. So, she learnt a new update in her technology called Spring boot. Later she moved to an IT division of an investment bank and is quite happy to be there.

VOCABULARY

Default (verb) - fail to fulfill an obligation, especially to repay a loan or to appear in a law court.
Eg: It is for the third time that the bank warned Tom not to default in payments

Seminars (noun) - a conference or other meeting for discussion or training.
Eg: Ram attended all the seminars on his technology.

Creativity (noun) - the use of imagination or original ideas to create something; inventiveness.
Eg: The manager was keen to encourage creativity.



Wages (noun) - a fixed regular payment earned for work or services, typically paid on a daily or weekly basis.
Eg: The workers did not receive wages for the day.

Update (noun) - an act of updating something or someone or an updated version of something.
Eg: There was a new update on the recently published tax rates.

24.Describe a performance you watched recently

You should say:

- What it was and when you watched it
- Who you were with?
- And explain why you watched it

(What it was a when you watched it)
Well, **when it comes to** watching live performances or music shows, the very experience that **springs to my mind** is the play 'Romeo & Juliet' by William Shakespeare that I enjoyed at the city theatre three years ago. Romeo and Juliet is a play written by William Shakespeare. The **setting** is in Italy and is about the love between two young people from **noble** families that are enemies. "Romeo and Juliet" has always been one of Shakespeare's most popular plays. It has also been **adapted** to opera, ballet, television productions, and movies.

(Who you were with)
I watched this play with my closest friend, Jennie. At that time, we were studying for a Masters Degree in London in the same university, and when we heard that a team would come to London to perform "Romeo and Juliet", we planned to watch it **without hesitation.** It was quite **cumbersome** to book the tickets as the play was so popular, but we managed eventually.

(And explain why you watched it)
Several factors made this play a worth-watching theatrical performance. The professional acting, **captivating** dialogues, intense romantic tale, **wrenching** separation and the tragic twist of the tale made the play unforgettable. The costumes of the performers were just the way they should be. Their dresses, stage, music, their makeup, their accent, and the **passionate** acting created the illusion of the real Romeo-Juliet era. The production and acting were superb and worthy of **commendation**. I still remember a news article which acclaimed the actors, and actresses of the London team for their professionalism.

Vocabulary from *Books and Films:*

the setting
Meaning: where the action takes place
Example: It's a historical novel and the setting was a fictional town called Casterbridge.

Other vocabulary:

when it comes to [expression]: as for something; speaking about something.
Eg: When it comes to fishing, John is an expert.



spring to mind [expression]: to come quickly into your mind.
Eg: Say the word "Australia" and a vision of beaches and blue seas immediately springs to mind.

noble [adj]: (especially in former times) a person of noble rank or birth.
Eg: The great nobles essentially use poets and poetry in the early seventeenth century to wage a war of prestige.

adapt [v]: make (something) suitable for a new use or purpose; modify.
Eg: Davies is busy adapting Brinkworth's latest novel for television.

without hesitation [expression]: if you say that someone does something without hesitation, you are emphasizing that they do it immediately and willingly.
Eg: The great majority of players would, of course, sign the contract without hesitation.

cumbersome [adj]: difficult to do or manage and taking a lot of time and effort.
Eg: Critics say that the process for amending the Constitution is cumbersome, but others defend it.

captivating [adj]: holding your attention by being extremely interesting, exciting, pleasant, or attractive.
Eg: Her voice was utterly/absolutely captivating.

wrenching [adj]: extremely stressful.
Eg: It was the most wrenching decision of the president's life.

passionate [adj]: having very strong feelings or emotions.
Eg: The child's mother made a passionate plea for help.

commendation [n]: praise, or an official statement that praises someone.
Eg: Several of the firefighters received commendation for their bravery.

PART 3: WATCHING PERFORMANCE

1. What's the difference between watching the performance live and watching it on TV? (*Give a direct answer to the question*) In my opinion, attending a live performance and watching a TV broadcast are two completely different ways of fun. **(*Give an example (often a personal example*))** As we all know; live exhibitions and events are festive occasions. Think about the claps, cheers, hoots, hollering, laughter and song along with a live performance which is absent when watched on a TV set. It creates a recreational aura whereby people forget the hurdles of life and upheave their morals. In other words, these occasions are best suited for extroverts, social people, who enjoy the crowd.

2. Which do you prefer: traditional performance or concert?
(***Give a direct answer to the question***) Well, a concert would be my choice. (***Explain your reason or reasons***) Seeing your favourite band, artist or DJ is such a life-changing and **exhilarating** experience. (***Give an example (often a personal example***)) If you've ever been to a concert, you'll know the sense of **togetherness** you get from the rest of the crowd. Out of a huge crowd, every single fan is



there for the same reason, and when the crowd erupts for the artist or a favourite song, it's a sense of community you won't get anywhere else.

3. Should the government provide financial support to promote traditional performance? (*Give a direct answer to the question*) Yes, I reckon so. **(*Explain your reason or reasons*)** The gradual decline of traditional performances is at the expense of national culture. Therefore, the government should give financial incentives to traditional artists to preserve the diversity of traditional forms of entertainment.

4. Is learning drama or dancing helpful for children?
(***Give a direct answer to the question***) Yes, it is (***Explain your reason or reasons***) Art instruction helps children with the development of motor skills, **musical talent**, language skills, social skills, decision-making, risk-taking, and inventiveness. Besides, art education connects students with their own culture as well as with the wider world.

Vocabulary from *Personality:*
extrovert
Meaning: an energetic person who likes the company of others
Example: I'd say I tend to be an extrovert.

Vocabulary from *Music:*

musical talent
Meaning: skilled at music
Example: Her musical talent is beyond imagination.

Other vocabulary:

aura [n]: the distinctive atmosphere or quality that seems to surround and be generated by a person, thing, or place.
Eg: There was an aura of pride surrounding him, a glow that made him look happy and that ended up making me feel a little better too.

exhilarating [adj]: making you feel very excited and happy.
Eg: Hong Kong in the late seventies was an exhilarating place to be.

togetherness [n]: the state of being close to another person or other people.
Eg: The sense of family togetherness was strong in the past.

at the expense of [expression]: in a way that harms (something or someone).
Eg: Malls flourished at the expense of small stores downtown.

incentive [n]: something that encourages you to do something.
Eg: In my country, there is literally no incentive for people to save fuel.

preserve [v]: maintain (something) in its original or existing state.
Eg: We need to preserve our liberties as free citizens.

25 .Describe something you bought but difficult to use at first

You should say:

- *What it was*
- *Where you bought it*
- *How you used it successfully and how you felt about it*

(What it was)
I'm going to describe an item I bought but confronted a lot of difficulties in using at first, because of certain reasons. It was a Macbook Air 2018, which I **set aside** a lot of money to purchase for my 20th birthday. For a student like me, the price of such a high-end product was quite **exorbitant**. However, everything from the chassis to the user **interface** was beautifully designed on a Mac, so I think it was well worth the money.

(Where you bought it)
It was months ago when I visited the FPT shop and chose this laptop by myself. I remember being **on cloud nine** when bringing it from the store to my room. At that time, I was quite overwhelmed by the size and product variety of the store, and I wished that I could be a billionaire to buy everything there. For **computer buffs**, the place would truly be heaven.

(How you used it successfully and how you felt about it)
Excited as I was to possess such an item, I found myself experiencing certain **discomfort** to **familiarize** myself with the Mac system. The keyboard shortcuts are completely different from that of Windows. It's easy to learn Command-C instead of Control-C, but it took me quite a while to figure out there was a shortcut for deleting a file. At that time, my work was considerably **hindered**, and my productivity was also affected. I remember doing a **thorough** search about the differences between the two systems and practised using the new laptop regularly with great determination. Over time, I **grew accustomed to** using Mac and made use of it a great deal, so I feel a sense of accomplishment whenever I recall this experience.

Vocabulary from *Technology:*
a computer buff:
Meaning: an expert computer user
Example: I wouldn't call myself a techie or a computer buff but I enjoy using computers.

Other vocabulary:

set aside [v]: to save something, usually money or time, for a special purpose.
Eg: He had some money in an account that he'd set aside for his kids.

exorbitant [adj]: (of prices and demands) much too large.
Eg: The hotel charges were exorbitant.

interface [n]: a point where two systems, subjects, organizations, etc., meet and interact.



Eg: The key account manager acts as the primary interface between the supplier organization and the customer.

on cloud nine [expression]: to be extremely happy and excited.
Eg: "Was Helen pleased about getting that job?" "Pleased? She was on cloud nine!"

discomfort [n]: a feeling of being uncomfortable physically or mentally, or something that causes this.
Eg: You may feel a little discomfort for a few days after the operation.

hinder [v]: to limit the ability of someone to do something, or to limit the development of something.
Eg: High winds have hindered firefighters in their efforts to put out the blaze.

familiarize [v]: give (someone) knowledge or understanding of something.
Eg: To familiarize yourself with something is to learn about it or become comfortable with it.

thorough [adj]: detailed and careful.
Eg: They did a thorough search of the area but found nothing.

(be)/ grow accustomed to [expression]: familiar with something.
Eg: She quickly became accustomed to his messy ways.

PART 3: PRODUCTS

1. **What kinds of products do young people think are useful but older people may not?**

(*Give a direct answer to the question*) Well, young people are often attracted to innovative gadgets, while older people often find them unnecessary. **(Explain *your reason or reasons*)** As I see it, most seniors find using technological devices an arduous task. Many products and services are not appropriate to the needs of older users, exacerbating the sense of frustration and leading to a dependence on other people **(*Give an example (often a personal example*))))** For example, my grandmother often turns to my sister and me for help with her smartphones, because she is not familiar with the keyboards.

2. Do you think product instructions are useful for users to use products better?
(***Give a direct answer to the question***) Yes, I think they are. **(*Explain your reason or reasons*)** The instruction manual is one of the most important sets of details provided to the customer. Its sole purpose is to ensure the customers uses the product properly. Clear artwork should be provided to the supplier at the time of the purchase order.

3. What do you usually do if you don't know how to use the things you have bought?

(***Give a direct answer to the question***) I would try to figure out how to use it instead of leaving it behind. **(*Explain your reason or reasons*)** Normally, I would do a thorough search about the item and practice using it with great determination. Of course, I have experienced certain discomforts with complicated products, but in most cases, I managed to familiarize myself with them.

4. Do you think it is necessary to produce many new products nowadays?
(***Give a direct answer to the question***) It is quite necessary nowadays. (***Explain your reason or reasons***) Regarding economic merits, customers now can enjoy inexpensive purchases of diverse



types of goods, which is particularly **favourable** for households with limited financial **backgrounds**. Also, the availability of more low-priced products offers consumers more spending choices and boosts overall consumption.

Vocabulary from *Technology:*
gadget
Meaning: a technological tool like a mobile phone or camera
Example: Such a gadget would help you considerably in studying.

Other vocabulary:

arduous [adj]: difficult, needing a lot of effort and energy.
Eg: In those days, a trip to the West was an arduous journey.

exacerbate [v]: to make something that is already bad even worse
Eg: This attack will exacerbate the already tense relations between the two communities.

properly [adv]: correctly, or in a satisfactory way.
Eg: I'm not properly dressed for this kind of weather.

thorough [adj]: detailed and careful.
Eg: They did a thorough search of the area but found nothing.

discomfort [n]: a feeling of being uncomfortable physically or mentally, or something that causes this.
Eg: You may feel a little discomfort for a few days after the operation.

familiarize [v]: give (someone) knowledge or understanding of something.
Eg: To familiarize yourself with something is to learn about it or become comfortable with it.

favourable [adj]: to the advantage of someone or something.
Eg: Old, mature fig trees can grow at least 40 feet tall in favorable climates.

background [n]: the conditions that existed before a particular event happened, and that help to explain why it happened.
Eg: These decisions have had to be made against a background of high unemployment.

26.Describe a difficult challenge you met

You should say:

- *What it was*
- *When you met it*
- *Where you met it*
- *And explain why you think it is a challenge*

(What it was)



Today I'm going to describe a challenge I **confronted** recently. I usually go out for a walk in the evening every day and sometimes play some outdoor games. Still, the outdoor activity that I did for the first time last month was mountain climbing which was of another level of difficulty.

(When you met it and where you met it)
At that time, after completing the **arduous** end-of-term examination, I was invited by a friend to go climbing on a mountain. He'd been doing it for about six months, and I had asked him about it once as I was curious whether mountain climbing requires a lot of **stamina**. At that time, I wanted to **get away from it all** and preferred going somewhere **off the beaten track**. I accepted his request **without hesitation** and even bought some suitable clothes for this activity. It was great fun. Although I was a little scared at first, **apprehensive,** to be exact, my special instructor was experienced, and I started practising on the ground and very low on the wall to gain confidence. However, the reality did not seem that easy, as the route to reach the mountain peak was **in twists and turns**. We almost felt the terminal point was approaching, but it was endless. I got a little exhausted and had to lean against a tree. My friend encouraged me to hold on, take a deep breath and only think about the mountain peak to continue to climb.

(And explain why you think it is a challenge)
Well, first of all, it was a wholly new and somehow **adventurous** experience for me. Climbing a mountain is as similar as overcoming each obstacle in your life. When I reached the top of the mountain, I felt a great sense of **refreshment** and my mind was momentarily away from all burdens and other **distractions.** Though undeniably exciting, mountain climbing requires a level of advanced preparation and physical fitness that few other activities can **equal**. I have gained more confidence after conquering such a demanding challenge.

Vocabulary from *Holiday:*
to get away from it all:
Meaning: to take a holiday to escape a busy or stressful lifestyle
Example: How can I get away from it all and just simply relax at the end of the day?

off the beaten track:
Meaning: in or into an isolated place
Example: The farmhouse we stayed in was completely off the beaten track.

Other vocabulary:

confront [v]: to face, meet, or deal with a difficult situation or person.
Eg: It's an issue we'll have to confront at some point, no matter how unpleasant it is.

arduous [adj]: difficult, needing a lot of effort and energy.
Eg: Domestic work remained especially arduous since, even in the 1970s, a large part of rural housing lacked basic amenities.

stamina [n]: the physical and/or mental strength to do something that might be difficult and will take a long time.
Eg: The triathlon is a great test of stamina.



without hesitation [expression]: if you say that someone does something without hesitation, you are emphasizing that they do it immediately and willingly.
Eg: The great majority of players would, of course, sign the contract without hesitation.

apprehensive [adj]: feeling worried about something that you are going to do or that is going to happen.
Eg: I'm very apprehensive about tomorrow's meeting.

twist and turns [expression]: curves and frequent changes of direction.
Eg: The road through the mountains has many twists and turns.

adventurous [adj]: exciting and often dangerous.
Eg: Instead of staying in the hotel all the time, we wanted to go out and be adventurous.

refreshment [n]: the fact of making somebody feel stronger or less tired or hot.
Eg: Minh is trying to find a place for rest and refreshment.

distraction (n): something that prevents someone from giving their attention to something else:
Eg: You can turn the television off if you find it a distraction.

equal [v]: to achieve the same standard or level as someone else, or the same standard or level as you did before.
Eg: We raised over $500 for charity last year and we're hoping to equal that this year.

PART 3: CHALLENGES

1. Do you think parents should give kids challenges?
(***Give a direct answer to the question***) Well, I do think so, and the reasons are **manifold.** (Explain ***your reason or reasons***) Young people must be pushed by their parents to be the best they can be, in whatever **pursuit** they take part in (***Give an example (often a personal example***)) Challenges and **cut-throat competition** prepare children for the real world. If you want a good job or a good salary, you have to compete with others.

2. What challenges do you think children might have to face up to? What is the most challenging thing for kids?
(***Give a direct answer to the question***) There are many difficulties youngsters are presented nowadays. (***Explain your reason or reasons***) For me, they are under **intense** pressure to find a productive place within society – either within the mainstream education system or satisfactory employment. The emphasis on acquiring **accomplishments**, status and wealth at a young age is **by no means** easy for them.

3. Can parents reduce the challenges that kids have? Why?
(***Give a direct answer to the question***) They should, to a certain extent. (***Explain your reason or reasons***) They should **adequately** ensure that their children, foremost, have fun, which will encourage them to stay interested and motivated in the achievement activity. Otherwise, by providing their children with challenges in which they are overmatched, parents may be **inadvertently** inhibiting, rather than facilitating, their interest, achievement, and enjoyment in the activity.



Vocabulary from *Business:*

cut throat competition
Meaning: intense competition
Example: Entering the national football team is a cut throat competition for all.

Other vocabulary:

manifold [adj]: many and of several different types.
Eg: Despite her manifold faults, she was a strong leader.

pursuit [n]: the action of following or pursuing someone or something.
Eg: All those who ran or walked the first fixture collected three points and will now have target times to chase in pursuit of the overall title.

intense [adj]: of extreme force, degree, or strength.
Eg: His head slammed against the window; breaking the glass before he flew forward, his ribcage hitting the steering wheel with intense force.

accomplishment [n]: something that is successful, or that is achieved after a lot of work or effort.
Eg: Getting the two leaders to sign a peace treaty was his greatest accomplishment.

by no means [expression]: not at all.
Eg: It is by no means certain that we'll finish the project by June.

properly [adv]: correctly, or in a satisfactory way.
Eg: I'm not properly dressed for this kind of weather.
inadvertently [n]: without intention; accidentally.
Eg: His name had been inadvertently omitted from the list.

27.Describe an interesting animal you have ever seen

You should say:

- What it was
- Where you saw it
- What it did
- And why you think it was interesting

(What it was)
I'm going to talk about an occasion on which I got to see elephants. I have had the chance to see a lot of animals **with my naked eyes**, but the most intriguing one for me are intelligent elephants. Elephants are mammals as well as **herbivores**, meaning they only eat plants rather than meat. Elephants are the largest land animals on earth, and they're one of the most unique-looking animals, too. With their characteristic long noses, or trunks; large, floppy ears; and wide, thick legs, there is no other animal with a similar **physique.**

(Where you saw it)
It was last summer when my whole family had a trip to Ho Chi Minh City, and we decided to visit the city's renowned zoo, Thao Cam Vien. It was ranked eighth among the oldest zoos in the world. It is



132 years old. It is the house to rare orchids, **ornamental** plants and hundreds of species of mammals, reptiles and birds. The main aim of Thao Cam Vien is to **conserve** animals and plants, especially **endangered species** and educate the public. One way to protect these species is by using breeding programs.

(What it did)
I got the chance to see a group of elephants swimming, which is entirely unexpected for me as I didn't know that they have this ability. Elephants move all four legs to swim and can move quite fast. Their giant bodies provide enough flotation while the trunk acts as a **snorkel.** From my observation, baby elephants enjoy playing in the water. They will often try to climb on the backs of older and bigger elephants and then splash back into the water. Calves will suck water into their trunks and spray at each other playfully.

(And why you think it was interesting)
Elephants feature many characteristics that are similar to humans. Apart from their **gigantic** bodies, they also boast extraordinary memories. Besides, they are recognized as being among the most intelligent creatures on earth. Elephants are capable of a range of emotions, including joy, playfulness, **grief** and mourning. Also, elephants can learn new facts and behaviours, **mimic** sounds that they hear, self-medicate, play with a sense of humour, perform artistic activities, use tools and display **compassion** and self-awareness.

Vocabulary from *Environment:*

endangered species
Meaning: categories of animals or plants that are in danger of becoming extinct
Example: Many tourists expressed their concern about the increasing rate of endangered species in this zoo.

Other vocabulary:

with one's naked eyes [expression]: without using any special device for making images larger.
Eg: We live miles away, but on a clear night, you can see the city skyscrapers with the naked eye.

herbivores [n]: an animal that eats only plants.
Eg: Cows and sheep are herbivores.

physique [n]: the form, size, and development of a person's body.
Eg: By 1540, Henry had become fat and he had lost the muscular physique he had when he was younger.

ornamental [adj]: beautiful rather than useful.
Eg: The handles on each side of the box are purely ornamental

conserve [v]: protect (something, especially an environmentally or culturally important place or thing) from harm or destruction.
Eg: As a result, their main impulse is to conserve wilderness from destruction by humans.

snorkel[n]: a short-curved tube for a swimmer to breathe through while keeping the face under water.
Eg: But yesterday he donned his snorkel and flippers to defend his title as World Champion Bog Snorkeller.

gigantic [adj]: of very great size or extent; huge or enormous.
Eg: The hunt for a house has been a gigantic part of my life for the last year so I'm bound to feel as if there's something missing.

grief [v]: deep sorrow, especially that caused by someone's death.
Eg: Grief over a traumatic death does not follow an accepted timeline.

mimic [v]: imitate (someone or their actions or words), typically in order to entertain or ridicule.
Eg: I've just mimicked him all my life, so he was a herpetologist, one who studies reptiles.

compassion [n]: sympathetic pity and concern for the sufferings or misfortunes of others.
Eg: After supping her fill of horrors, her capacity to feel compassion was deeply affected.

PART 3: ANIMALS

1. How do you like taking care of animals?
(***Give a direct answer to the question***) To me, taking care of animals is an **arduous** task. Besides providing all the necessary things, like food, water, **shelter** and safety, you also need to provide quality health care for them. I am not an animal lover. I get frightened by different kinds of animals due to my experiences with them, and the only kind that I feel comfortable to be with are birds. (***Give an example (often a personal example***)) I admire them for their beautiful voices and the unique ability to fly.

2. What kinds of pets are most popular in Vietnam?
(***Give a direct answer to the question***) Vietnamese people love their pets, especially dogs. They **appreciate** dogs for the company and the loyalty they provide. You could find a dog, a cat or a cow being owned by a Vietnamese family. It is not for any monetary reasons but because they like being **surrounded** by animals and taking great care of them. Animals do bring a certain amount of happiness and **togetherness** in a family. (***Explain the opposite or alternative***) Fishes are another common pets in Vietnam even though they don't do much for their owners. Besides, some foreigners are surprised to know that birds and **reptiles** are prefered by many Vietnamese.

3. What are some of the advantages and disadvantages of having a pet?
(***Give a direct answer to the question***) On the one hand, having **domesticated** animals at home is interesting. Some people decide to own pets because they need a companion at home. Playing with pets is a kind of **refreshment.** (***Explain the opposite or alternative***) On the other hand, the disadvantages of having pets relate mostly to the responsibility of caring for them. Pet owners must discharge their duties responsibly by feeding these animals with proper food, exercising them and ensuring they get medical treatment, as well as the required yearly **vaccination**.

Vocabulary:
arduous [adj]: involving or requiring strenuous effort; difficult and tiring.
Eg: Before becoming a Mass server one had to learn the Latin responses and this was a long and arduous task.



shelter [n]: a place giving temporary protection from bad weather or danger.
Eg: A year after the earthquake that devastated Gujarat, local people still live in tents or temporary shelters.

particular [adj]: special, or this and not any other.
Eg: In the light of recent incidents, we are asking our customers to take particular care of their personal belongings.

appreciate [v]: to recognize how good someone or something is and to value him, her, or it.
Eg: There's no point buying him expensive wines - he doesn't appreciate them.

surround [v]: to be everywhere around something.
Eg: She said that she wanted to die surrounded by the people she loves

togetherness [n]: the pleasant feeling of being united with other people in friendship and understanding.
Eg: War had given to the community a greater sense of togetherness.

reptile [n]: an animal that produces eggs and uses the heat of the sun to keep its blood warm.
Eg: Reptiles are cold-blooded animals – they need the sun to stay warm.

domesticated [adj]: (of an animal) tame and kept as a pet or on a farm.
Eg: However, milk-producing ruminant animals were domesticated about 10,000 years ago, according to archaeological evidence.

refreshment [n]: the fact of making somebody feel stronger or less tired or hot.
Eg: Minh is trying to find a place for rest and refreshment.
vaccination [n]: the process or an act of giving someone a vaccine (= a substance put into a person's body to prevent them getting a disease).
Eg: All the children were given two vaccinations against measles.

28. Describe a family member who you spend the most time with

You should say:

- *Who is this person?*
- *What kind of person he /she is?*
- *What do you usually do together?*
- *And explain why you spend the most time with him/her?*

(Who this person is)
I feel blessed to have a great family which made **unparalleled** contributions to help me go ahead. Among them, my father's impact is the most meaningful, and I treasure our quality time together.

(What kind of person he /she is?)
He is the person whom I love most in this world, and I consider him to be a perfect father and husband with his **upbeat** disposition, **resourcefulness** and responsibility. My father is an **exemplary** person who has led an honest life. As a high-ranking government officer, he has had many chances to pile up the riches, but he always stood by the truth and never broke the rules.



(What do you usually do together?)
From my childhood, he has dedicated much time to raising me with great care, **affection** and mentorship. When I was young, he taught me moral lessons about the world, **inspirational** people and values and also the necessary skills. No matter how preoccupied with work, he always tried to give **wholehearted** support to my education, especially with my activities at school. When we were together, he frequently discussed plans for the future and encouraged me to challenge myself to step out of my **comfort zones.**

(And explain why you spend the most time with him/her?)
As a father, I would say he has done everything possible to raise my sister and me. He spent his entire life catering to our interests and demands. The basics of humanity and the importance of education were the values he delivered to me. We **get on very well with** each other, and I **enjoy his company**. Our times together have always been **insightful** and full of joy.

Vocabulary from *Relationship:*

to get on well with
Meaning: to understand someone and enjoy similar interests
Example: We all get on really well and have a lot in common so we're always happy doing the same things and going to the same places

to enjoy someone's company:
Meaning: to like spending time with someone
Example: I think we enjoy each other's company so we rarely fall out with each other.

Other vocabulary:

unparalleled [adj]: better than all others .
Eg: He had a talent unparalleled by any other politician in this country.
phenomenon [n]: something that exists and can be seen, felt, tasted, etc., especially something unusual or interesting.
Eg: Do you believe in the paranormal and other psychic phenomena?

upbeat [adj]: full of hope, happiness, and good feelings.
Eg: Live music and a parade set an upbeat mood for the official opening.

resourcefulness [n]: the ability to be good at finding ways of doing things and solving problems.
Eg: Resourcefulness is an essential quality for a good employee.

exemplary [adj]: providing a good example for somebody to copy.
Eg: Minh is the most exemplary student in our class this semester.

affection [n]: the feeling of liking or loving something/somebody very much.
Eg: Children nowadays need a lot of attention and affection.

inspirational [adj]: making you feel full of hope or encouraged.
Eg: He gave an inspirational reading of his own poems.

whole-hearted [adj]: completely enthusiastic.

Eg: The minister has pledged his wholehearted support for the plans.

comfort zone [expression]: a situation in which you feel comfortable and in which your ability and determination are not being tested.
Eg: Rock climbing pushes many people beyond their comfort zones.

perspiration [n]: the process of sweating.
Eg: He failed to do this, but found that shed blood and perspiration had no more attraction for females than had water.

insightful [adj]: having or showing an accurate and deep understanding; perceptive.:sâu sắc
Eg: This is a very thoughtful, insightful analysis.

PART 3: FAMILY

1.What are the benefits of younger and older generations living together? How about the drawbacks?
(*Give a direct answer to the question*) In terms of the advantages, we can see that the presence of older family members will ease the **burden** of raising kids. **(Explain *your reason or reasons*)** In large families, there are more connections and interactions between family members. Besides, grandparents could also teach **valuable** lessons and essential manners to their children. **(*Give an example (often a personal example*))** However, there exist some generation gaps when three generations live together, which sometimes increases the **tension** between family members. Nowadays, as life is becoming increasingly **modernized**, especially in **hectic** cities, only parents and children can live together.
]
2. Which do you prefer, support from family members or friends? Why?
(*Give a direct answer to the question*) My family. **(*Explain your reason or reasons*)** You can have many friends, but your family members are **irreplaceable.** Friends can come and go at different stages of your life like secondary school, high school, university, but it is your family who never **abandons** you no matter what happens. **(*Explain the opposite or alternative*)** Yet, your friends' support is a crucial factor that leads to your personal growth. **(*Give an example (often a personal example*))** From my experience, good friends are especially important during times of crisis and **turbulence.** When I find myself going through a hard time, my closest friend never failed to cheer me up and sailed me through both emotional and academic **setbacks**.

Vocabulary:

burden [n]: a duty that causes worry, difficulty or hard work.
Eg: I don't want to become a burden to my family when I'm old.

valuable [adj]: very useful or important.
Eg: The book provides valuable information on recent trends.

tension [n]: a situation when people do not trust each other, or feel unfriendly towards each other.
Eg: There is mounting tension in the company.

hinder [v]: to make it difficult for somebody to do something or something to happen.
Eg: There is a political situation that hinders economic growth.



modernize [v]: to make something more modern and more suitable for use at the present time.
Eg: The factory is investing more money to modernize its facilities.

hectic [adj]: very busy, full of activity.
Eg: Ho Chi Minh is a very hectic city.

irreplaceable [adj]: cannot be replaced.
Eg: Her position in his heart is irreplaceable.

abandon [v]: to leave somebody, especially somebody you are responsible for.
Eg: The baby had been abandoned by its heartless mother.

turbulence [n]: a state of confusion without any order.
Eg: The era was characterized by political and cultural turbulence.

setback [n]: something that happens that delays or prevents a process from developing.
Eg: There has been a slight/temporary setback in our plans.

29. Describe a crowded place you have been to

You should say:

- *When you went there*
- *With who you went there*
- *Why you went there*
- *And how you felt about it*

(When you went there)
Most often, crowded places are public venues that attract a large number of people. **Megacities** like New York, Beijing, and Tokyo are known for being **exceptionally** crowded. Photos of **massive** crowds of people depict these cities' residents doing everything from walking down the street to marching in parades and even sitting in traffic. My experience at a crowded place was in one of these cities, Tokyo.

(With who you went there)
Last month, my family decided to choose Tokyo as our **holiday destination**. Tokyo is Japan's capital and the world's most **populous** metropolis. Today, Tokyo has become one of the world's most active cities, home to **cutting-edge** technology, information, culture, and fashion, as well as a high level of public safety.

(Why you went there)
Visiting Tokyo has always been one of my biggest travel dreams. It is a modern, fast-paced city that still **embraces** its traditional roots. Even though the city is large, there's a sense of cleanliness and order about Tokyo that makes it extremely accessible to visitors.

(And how you felt about it)
There are many things to talk about the once in a lifetime experience in Tokyo. Perhaps best of all is its structure: lacking a clearly marked centre, it's made up of a **patchwork** of different neighbourhoods, each distinct in identity and atmosphere. "Animated" is perhaps the best word to



describe Tokyo. The most crowded place must be Shibuya crossing, the biggest and busiest crossing in Tokyo, where sometimes 1000 or more people cross the **intersection** at once. My family also experienced Tokyo's crowded trains during rush hour, and the **commotion** was so bothersome. Apart from its overwhelming number of people, I have nothing to complain about this city. Indeed, I am particularly impressed with the **civility** and orderliness of the people in Tokyo.

Part 3

PART 3: CROWDED PLACE

1. Do people like to go to crowded places? Why?
(***Give a direct answer to the question***) Yes, I think most modern people like crowded places and the reasons are **manifold**. (Explain ***your reason or reasons***) Practically, **vibrant** young people prefer sharing their activities with the crowd and take it as a **collective** enjoyment. (***Explain the opposite or alternative***) In contrast to young people who like adventure & loudness, older people value their **privacy** and their time by themselves.

2. How can the problem of traffic congestion be solved?
(***Give a direct answer to the question***) On the one hand, adequate investment in road improvements might help reduce **chaotic** traffic congestion in cities significantly (***Explain the opposite or alternative***). Besides, **implementing** rail and subway systems could guarantee that traffic congestion is **adequately addressed**. (***Explain your reason or reasons***) Trains do not have to go through **intersections** and traffic lights, and dedicated lines ensure their travel is hardly interrupted.

3. Why do people still like to live in big cities even though there are severe traffic jams? (*Give a direct answer to the question*) Apparently, for many city dwellers, living in the city is increasingly accessible and offers plenty of opportunities. (*Explain your reason or reasons*) Inarguably, when living in major cities, one will be presented with better career prospects. For example, for those working in urban areas with more qualifications, job positions in multinational companies would be more approachable.

4. What public facilities does your city have?
(***Give a direct answer to the question***) Well, my city offers a wide range of public **facilities** for its residents. (***Explain your reason or reasons***) Thanks to the governmental financial investment for improvements in systems of **public transport**, like bus or underground services; our daily travel has been greatly facilitated.

Vocabulary from *Town and City:*

public transport
Meaning: public vehicles such as buses and trains that operate at regular times on a fixed route.
Example: This city offers an excellent system of public transport.

Other vocabulary:

manifold [adj]: many and of several different types.
Eg: Despite her manifold faults, she was a strong leader.

vibrant [adj]: full of energy and enthusiasm.



Eg: The director says that he has always been inspired by the vibrant energy of the youth and the charm of campuses.

collective [adj]: of or shared by every member of a group of people.
Eg: It was a collective decision/effort.

privacy [n]: the state of being alone.
Eg: I hate sharing a bedroom - I never get any privacy.

chaotic [adj]: in a state of complete confusion and lack of order.
Eg: The traffic in the city is chaotic in the rush hour.

implement [v]: to start using a plan or system.
Eg: The changes to the national health system will be implemented next year.

properly [adv]: correctly, or in a satisfactory way.
Eg: I'm not properly dressed for this kind of weather.

intersection [n]: a point or line common to lines or surfaces that intersect.
Eg: If you remember back to an economics class you might have taken, much time was spent on the intersection of lines in those graphs.

approachable [adj]: (of a place) able to be reached from a particular direction or by a particular means.
Eg: The headland it was built on forms a natural stronghold with the sea on three sides and is only approachable from the north.

facility [n]: something such as a place, building, or equipment used for a particular purpose or activity.
Eg: His facility for memorizing dates was astonishing.

30. Describe a time when someone apologized to you

You should say:

- *When it was*
- *Who this person is*
- *Why he or she apologized to you*
- *How you felt about it*

(When it was and who this person is)

Apologizing is a part of good manners, and I believe that it helps to **alleviate** many **bothersome** situations happening in everyday life. In several events, others have apologized to me but the apology from my closest friend, Linh, was the most significant to me. It happened a few months ago, when my father presented me with two movie tickets, as an **incentive** for achieving full scores in the English exam. The compelling trailer of this movie captured my attention right away, and I knew that I should enjoy it with my best friend. Unhesitatingly, I decided to invite Linh, and we quickly made an appointment for the cinema before 6 pm.

(Why he or she apologized to you)



As scheduled previously, Linh was supposed to show up at the cinema at 5:30, but somehow she did not. I did **give her so many rings**, but she did not answer them. I kept waiting until 6 pm but **in vain**. **In the heat of the moment**, I **lost my temper** and **furiously** left her a message, saying how disappointed I was with her and asked whether she respected our relationship. A day later, Linh sent a **heartfelt** apology to me. She explained that on that day, her younger brother was disturbed by a severe eating disorder, and she had to take care of him at the hospital. Because the incident was so sudden and unexpected, she was too nervous about taking the phone with her and was unable to contact me. Linh hoped that I could understand and **sympathize with** her.

(How you felt about it)
Honestly, I felt a little guilty for being too **aggressive** while knowing nothing about her situation. From this incident, I also understand that everything happens for a reason. We should not **jump to a conclusion** without careful consideration. Besides, sincere apologies are indeed an **indication** of respect for the relationship.

Vocabulary from *Personality:*

to lose one's temper:
Meaning: to suddenly become angry
Example: You should not lose your temper in situations like that.

Other vocabulary:

pacify [v]: to make somebody who is angry or upset become calm and quiet.
Eg: The speech was designed to pacify the irate crowd.

bothersome [adj]: special, good or unusual and therefore worth remembering or easy to remember.
Eg: This is a truly memorable occasion for all people involved.
incentive [n]: something that encourages you to do something.
Eg: In my country, there is literally no incentive for people to save fuel.

give somebody a ring [expression]: phone somebody.
Eg: Minh promised to give me a ring as soon as he came home.

in the heat of the moment [expression]: be in the moment of strong feelings, especially of anger or excitement.
Eg: In the heat of the moment, Linda forgot what she wanted to say to her mother.

furiously [adv]: in an angry way.
Eg: All the architects worked furiously during the week, complaining that their wages were unsatisfactory.

heartfelt [adj]: showing strong feelings that are sincere.
Eg: In the ceremony, the director expressed heartfelt gratitude to all the employees, who worked diligently on the project.

sympathize with [v]: to feel sorry for somebody; to show that you understand and feel sorry about somebody's problem .



Eg: The reporter sympathized with the victim, because she herself has undergone such similar unhappy experiences.

jump to a conclusion [expression]: to make a decision about something/ somebody too quickly, before you know or have thought about all the facts.
Eg: The police neglectfully overlooked the situation and jumped to the conclusion that he was guilty.

indication [n]: a remark or sign that shows that something is happening or what somebody is thinking or feeling.
Eg: Obviously, there are indications that the economy of this nation is improving.

PART 3: APOLOGIZE

1. On what occasion do people usually apologize to others?
(***Give a direct answer to the question***) Well, sometimes people apologize when realizing that they may have hurt another individual (i.e., physically, emotionally, mentally) by accident.
A sincere apology allows you to let people know you're not proud of what you did, and won't be repeating the behaviour. (***Give an example (often a personal example***)) For example, whenever I **lose my temper** and misbehave, I send an apology to them.

2. Do people in your country like to say "sorry"?
(***Give a direct answer to the question***) Well, not very often (***Explain your reason or reasons***) I assume it's not a part of our culture. (***Give an example (often a personal example***)) From my experience, Japanese people are more **inclined to** say sorry. Apologizing is built into the Japanese language. Japanese people have it in their blood; they apologize all the time, even when it's not their fault. It's almost like a **reflex**, but it's not, because I could see the emotion in my Japanese friends' eyes every time they apologized to me. They do it even if they touch you by mistake or have their back turned at you without being willing to.

3. Do you think people should apologize for anything wrong they do?
(***Give a direct answer to the question***) Yes, I do. (***Explain your reason or reasons***) If something you've done has caused pain for another person, it's a good idea to apologize, even if your action was **unintentional**. This is because apologizing opens up the doors to communication, which allows you to reconnect with the person who was hurt. In these ways, being **adept** at apologizing when appropriate can bring the benefits that come with stronger relationships, reduced conflict, and forgiveness—it's well **worth the effort.**

Vocabulary from *Personality:*

to lose one's temper:
Meaning: to suddenly become angry
Example: You should not lose your temper in situations like that.

Other vocabulary:

inappropriately [adv]: in a way that is unsuitable, or wrong in a particular situation.
Eg: There is nothing to suggest the attorney acted inappropriately in the case.

(be) inclined to [adj]: likely or wanting to do something.

Eg: No one seemed inclined to help.

reflex [n]: a physical reaction to something that you cannot control.
Eg: I'm sorry I punched him; it was a reflex action/response.

unintentional [adj]: not done on purpose.:
Eg: There's an unintentional feeling of sadness in Woody Allen's latest comedy.

adept [adj]: having a natural ability to do something that needs skill.
Eg: She's very adept at dealing with the media.

worth the effort [expression]: If you say that something is worth the effort, you mean that it will justify the energy that you have spent or will spend on it.
Eg: Fortunately, the chore of leaf sweeping is well worth the effort.

31. Describe an important journey that has been delayed

You should say:

- *When it was*
- *Why it was important*
- *How it was delayed*
- *And how you felt about it*

(When it was)
Today, I'm going to describe an important journey that was delayed. It was a trip organized to Bach Ma national park for all students in my high school three years ago. It was done **to raise** students' awareness of the importance of protecting the environment.

(Why it was important)
The reason why it was of great importance was that the educational trip was a beneficial way for a student to acquire knowledge and experience. When notified about the trip, our class searched a lot of information about the park. We were **enthralled** to see pictures of several thousand trees, faunas and floras, hills, lakes etc. of this place. Our biology teacher used to tell us that the national park **boasted** a lot of **endangered species.** Through the trip, we would be able to learn more about the importance of forests, the necessity and our responsibility to **alleviate** environmental problems, making the world a better place for all the species and not just for humans only.

(How it was delayed)
Against our expectations, the weather that day was so horrible that the headmaster decided to delay this journey **for the sake of** students' safety. This situation was so unexpected because I clearly remember that the weather of the day before was perfect with a mild temperature. However, the unexpectedly **unfavourable** weather eventually **hindered** our plan.

(And how you felt about it)
My friends and I were quite **pissed off**. To me, the whole trip promised to be **enlightening** and truly practical, which would offer students a **getaway** from daily heavy schoolwork. However, our school rearranged the trip for the students, and we managed to get to the park two months later, which was an unforgettable experience for all of us.



Vocabulary from *Environment:*

endangered species
Meaning: categories of animals or plants that are in danger of becoming extinct
Example: Many tourists expressed their concern about the increasing rate of endangered species in this zoo.

Other vocabulary:

with a view to [expression]: with an intention to do something.
Eg: The politician reveals the truth with a view to gaining more faith from the public.

(be) enthralled by something [adj]: be attracted to something that is so interesting, beautiful.
Eg: The child watched, completely enthralled by bright moving images.

(to) boast [v]: have something that is impressive and that you can be proud of.
Eg: The hotel also boasts two swimming pools and a golf course.

alleviate [n]: to make something bad such as pain or problems less severe.
Eg: The drugs did nothing to alleviate her pain/suffering.

for the sake of [expression]: in order to help or bring advantage to someone.
Eg: He moved to the seaside for the sake of his health.

unfavourable [adj]: not tending to help; not likely to lead to a positive result.
Eg: Unfavourable weather conditions this morning caused a postponement of the launch of the space shuttle.

hinder [v]: to limit the ability of someone to do something, or to limit the development of something:
Eg: High winds have hindered firefighters in their efforts to put out the blaze.

(be) pissed off [adj]: very annoyed; angry.
Eg: He'd kept me waiting for an hour so I was pissed off to start with.

enlightening [adj]: giving somebody information so that they understand something better.
Eg: The lecture was so enlightening that all the students loved it.

getaway [n]: an escape from something.
Eg: If you aspire to a getaway from the harshness of life, this place is a suitable one.

PART 3: TRANSPORTATION

1.Will people still drive a car if public transportation is free of charge?
(***Give a direct answer to the question***) Well, probably. (***Give an example (often a personal example***)) Free public transport would reduce the number of cars on the road. **Global warming** is a serious issue, and if **public transport** was free, more people would use it, taking cars off the road and substantially **cutting down CO2 emissions**. With more users, inadequate public transport networks

would be improved by the government, to make it increasingly **approachable**. It's a worthwhile **incentive.**

2.How can transportation in rural areas be developed?
(***Give a direct answer to the question***) Reliable transportation is needed for rural residents to access healthcare services, consumer services, employment and educational opportunities, and social services. It is also important for accessing recreation and other activities of daily life. (***Explain your reason or reasons***) Therefore, the **long-term** investment in an efficient and affordable system of transportation would **lay the foundation for** economic growth in rural areas and help ensure that people can obtain services and participate in public life.

3.How often do people usually travel?
(***Give a direct answer to the question***) People travel quite often nowadays. (***Explain your reason or reasons***) The presence of modern technology and low-cost air travel has eased much of the **burden** associated with travelling. Since we now have access to more tools and infrastructure, the transportation system, as well as travel, have been improved. For example, roads are better, broader and more accessible; therefore, the need to travel has increased rapidly.

4.In what ways can the traffic conditions in a city be improved?
(***Give a direct answer to the question***) For me, upgrading rail and subway systems in cities could address traffic congestion. (***Explain your reason or reasons***) Unlike cars and buses, trains are capable of transporting hundreds of people simultaneously and thus would meet the transport demand of a vast number of passengers. Trains do not have to go through **intersections** and traffic lights, and dedicated lines ensure their travel is hardly interrupted.

Vocabulary from *Town and City:*

public transport
Meaning: public vehicles such as buses and trains that operate at regular times on fixed routes.
Example: This city offers an excellent system of public transport.

Vocabulary from *the environment:*

to cut down on emissions
Meaning: to reduce the amount of gases sent out into the air
Example: People must be made aware of the need **to cut down on emissions** from their cars if we are to reduce air pollution.

global warming
Meaning: the process by which the Earth is getting hotter, as a result of the greenhouse effect
Example: Perhaps the major environmental challenge which faces humanity today is **global warming**, because it threatens our survival.

Other vocabulary:

approachable [adj]: (of a place) able to be reached from a particular direction or by a particular means.
Eg: The headland it was built on forms a natural stronghold with the sea on three sides and is only approachable from the north.

incentive [n]: something that encourages you to do something.



Eg: In my country, there is literally no incentive for people to save fuel.

long-term [adj]: that will last or have an effect over a long period of time.
Eg: At the moment, long-term investment in education would favour the overall development of this nation.

lay the foundation for something [expression]: set, start a principle, an idea or a fact that something is based on and that it grows from.
Eg: Respect and friendship lay a solid foundation for marriage.

burden [n]: a duty that causes worry, difficulty or hard work.
Eg: I don't want to become a burden to my family when I'm old.

intersection [n]: a point or line common to lines or surfaces that intersect.
Eg: If you remember back to an economics class you might have taken, much time was spent on the intersection of lines in those graphs.

32. Describe a change that can improve your local area

You should say:

- *What is it*
- *How it can be made*
- *What benefit it will bring*
- *And how you feel about it*

(What it is)
I'm going to describe a change that can improve my local area, which is the construction of a new giant building in the city centre. It would be a complex of **shopping malls**, hotels and offices. For a small area like my city, the advent of a modern, state-of-the-art shopping mall would be an undoubtedly **favourable** development. It would consist mainly of changes related to social, economic, as well as functional and **spatial** spheres.

(How it can be made)
Well, I think it is the local authorities' responsibility to **initiate** such a large-scale project. The construction of this building would require a professional architectural firm, a team of subcontractors, a knowledgeable contractor, and a cooperative developer/owner to get the job done in a reasonable time frame.

(What benefit it will bring)
Many benefits follow such a development for a small area. First, this complex would **incorporate** ample parking in its design and construction. This would make it advantageous for people who choose to shop there instead of a single store. With a broader range of goods and services, the overall **consumer spending** would be strongly **stimulated**, which favours the provincial economy. The centre would also allow foreign visitors to purchase goods with greater diversity, as compared to other supermarkets in the past.

(And how you felt about it)
Such an improvement would exert a **long-term** influence on the lives of local people in many aspects, such as the economy, tourism. As a part of the city, I feel excited about this **progressive** turn, and I believe the building would enhance people's living standards as a whole. Most



importantly, the success of this building would **lay the very foundation** for other **large-scale** investments in my city.

Vocabulary from Town and City*:*
shopping malls
Meaning: large indoor shopping centres
Example: There are many shopping malls in the city centre.

Other vocabulary:

favourable [adj]: to the advantage of somebody/something
Eg: The speaker announced the favorable establishment of a new college.

spatial [adj]: of or relating to space
Eg: The exhibition has great spatial sense.

initiate [v]: to make something begin
Eg: The government has initiated a program of economic reform.

incorporate [v]: include/ take something in as a form:
Eg: The building incorporates a lot of state-of-the-art facilities.

consumer spending [expression]: the spending of consumer:
Eg: Consumer spending this year has increased exponentially.

stimulate [v]: to make something develop or become more active; to encourage something:
Eg: The article can be used to stimulate discussion among students.

long-term [adj]: that will last or have an effect over a long period of time:
Eg: At the moment, long-term investment in education would favour the overall development of this nation.

progressive [adj]: happening or developing steadily:
Eg: There is a progressive reduction in the size of the workforce.

large-scale [adj]: involving many people or things, especially over a wide area.
Eg: This building is a large-scale development for our nation.

lay the foundation for something [expression]: set, start a principle, an idea or a fact that something is based on and that it grows from.
Eg: Respect and friendship lay a solid foundation for marriage.

PART 3: COMMUNITY

1. Why are people living in a community, friendly with others?
(***Give a direct answer to the question***) Well, it is quite easy to understand the importance of living in a community (Explain ***your reason or reasons***) Being a part of a community can make us feel as though we are a part of something greater than ourselves. It can give us opportunities to connect with people, to reach for our goals, and make us feel safe and secure. (***Give an example (often a***

personal example)) In the age where technology connects and separates us, a friendly **residential area** can greatly benefit our well-being and can increase our **contentment** in day-to-day life.

2. Do people like living in a community?
(***Give a direct answer to the question***) I think the majority do. (***Explain your reason or reasons***) It seems that our sense of self-worth and well-being is **inextricably** linked to the feeling that we are part of a group. This sense of belonging allows us to feel acknowledged and recognized for who we truly are. This sense of belonging is very much **part and parcel** of being a member of an intentional community. Through sharing our experiences daily, we can also enjoy mutually **supportive** relationships that can be more trusting than usual.

3. Why do people in a community usually have a social gathering?
(***Give a direct answer to the question***) Well, the organization of a social gathering would be **in the interest of** the people involved. (***Explain your reason or reasons***) Social gatherings develop social skills and empathy—the outward-oriented dimensions of emotional intelligence. Participating in social events enables individuals to meet people who can help them academically or professionally. Relationship-building is a good habit that students need to learn because the world of work requires **aptitude** in **negotiation**, communication and networking.

Vocabulary from *Town and City:*
residential area
Meaning: an area where people live
Example: I live in a residential area of a busy town in the south of Spain

Other vocabulary:

contentment [n]: a state of happiness and satisfaction.
Eg: Reddy was an avid reader and got many hours of contentment and enjoyment from books and newspapers.

inextricably [adv]: in a way that is unable to be separated, released, or escaped from.
Eg: The Louis Armstrong legend is inextricably linked with his recordings.

part and parcel [expression]: to be a feature of something, especially a feature that cannot be avoided.
Eg: Being recognized in the street is part and parcel of being a celebrity.

supportive [adj]: showing agreement and giving encouragement.
Eg: Children with supportive parents often do better at school than those without.

in the interest of [expression]: if you do something in the interests of a particular result or situation, you do it in order to achieve that result or maintain that situation:.
Eg: A call for all businessmen to work together is in the interests of national stability.

aptitude [n]: a natural ability or skill.
Eg: We will take your personal aptitudes and abilities into account.

negotiation [n]: the process of discussing something with someone in order to reach an agreement with them, or the discussions themselves.
Eg: The agreement was reached after a series of difficult negotiations.

33. Describe an occasion when weather prevented your activity

You should say:

- *When it was*
- *Why it prevented your activity*
- *What you did*
- *And how you felt about it*

(When it was)
I'm going to tell you an experience that happened last summer when I was going to hike on a faraway mountain. However, the unexpectedly unfavorable weather eventually **hindered** my plan. It was a **balmy** day with a mild temperature, perfect conditions for an **adventurous** activity like hiking. After having breakfast, I checked my backpack, made sure I was wearing my most comfortable shoes and took the bus to the foothills.

(Why it prevented your activity)
However, when I reached there, the sun disappeared, and the temperature changed **vastly**. The wind had picked up, with dark clouds rolling across the sky. This was no doubt an **indication** of **heavy rain** or worse, a big storm. From my previous experience, I knew right away that it is **by no means** an easy task to hike by myself in such conditions, as the mountain road I chose was full of **twists and turns**.

(What you did)
Demotivated as I felt, I had to cancel the hiking plans for the sake of my safety. However, on the way back, I found a hot spring resort by the road, which I had never been to before. I decided to treat myself to a service there to make up for the failed plan.

(And how you felt about it)
Of course, I was **utterly** disappointed initially because I had been planning this hike for a long time. Yet, the spring resort experience was beautiful. After two hours there, all my tiredness was gone, and I felt refreshed**.** Though bathing was not my first choice of the day, it turned out to be fulfilling.

Vocabulary from *Holiday:*
heavy rain
Meaning: intense rainfall
Example: Many tourists have their flights delayed due to the heavy rain.

Other vocabulary:

hinder [v]: to limit the ability of someone to do something, or to limit the development of something
Eg: High winds have hindered firefighters in their efforts to put out the blaze.

balmy [adj]: (of the weather) pleasantly warm.
Eg: The exhibition was held in the balmy days of late summer.

adventurous [adj]: exciting and often dangerous.
Eg: Instead of staying in the hotel all the time, we wanted to go out and be adventurous.

vastly [adv]: very much.
Eg: Assessing the larger numbers of women suffering severe maternal morbidity would vastly increase their workload.

indication [n]: a remark or sign that shows that something is happening or what somebody is thinking or feeling:
Eg: Obviously, there are indications that the economy of this nation is improving.

by no means [expression]: not at all
Eg: It is by no means certain that we'll finish the project by June.

twist and turns [expression]: curves and frequent changes of direction
Eg: The road through the mountains has many twists and turns.

demotivate [v]: to make someone less enthusiastic about something
Eg: She was very demotivated by being told she had little chance of being promoted.

utterly [adv]: completely or extremely
Eg: She was utterly devastated when her husband died.

refreshment [n]: the fact of making somebody feel stronger or less tired or hot.
Eg: Minh is trying to find a place for rest and refreshment.

PART 3: WEATHER

1. Does weather have any impact on people's daily activities?
(***Give a direct answer to the question***) Yes, of course. (Explain ***your reason or reasons***) Weather affects people's everyday lives by **governing** choices they make about what clothes to wear, how to travel, and the activities in which they participate. Weather also affects the moods of many people. (***Give an example (often a personal example***)) In areas where **distinct** seasons exist, such as snowstorms, can cancel school, meaning parents may have to scramble for childcare, and students get a day off from school.
Winter can also make commutes to work a **nuisance,** if not dangerous.

2. Why do people do different kinds of sports in different weather?
(***Give a direct answer to the question***) This is a way of adaptation for me. (***Explain your reason or reasons***) The effects of weather on sport are varied, with some events being unable to occur. While outdoor sports are most affected, those played indoors can still be impacted by **unfavourable** weather conditions.

3. What kind of weather do Vietnamese people like?
(***Give a direct answer to the question***) I'm afraid there is no definite answer to this question, but it may probably be the sunny, mild weather in spring. (***Explain your reason or reasons***) The temperature is neither **bitterly** cold nor **unbearably** hot, so people in Vietnam tend to go on a picnic



or take **a brisk walk** in the park. This is when families get together, so I believe that people feel happier with this kind of weather.

4. Do Vietnamese people talk about the weather when they meet for the first time?
(***Give a direct answer to the question***) Not at all. (***Explain your reason or reasons***) This is the tradition of British people. The real reason people in Britain like to talk about the weather is that they are quite socially **inept.** Besides, the weather makes a particularly good topic of conversation because it is so **variable.** This is not the case in Vietnam.

Vocabulary from *Sports:*
a brisk walk:
Meaning: a fast walk
Example: You should take a brisk walk to relax yourself.

Other vocabulary:

govern [v]: conduct the policy, actions, and affairs of (a state, organization, or people)
Eg: The Netherlands is a unitary state governed by a central body.

distinct [adj]: recognizably different in nature from something else of a similar type.
Eg: Whilst distinct in terms of research focus, the two projects were theoretically and methodologically similar.

nuisance [n]: a person, thing, or circumstance causing inconvenience or annoyance:
Eg: In return, they don't secede or otherwise make a nuisance of themselves.

unfavourable [adj]: not likely to lead to a positive result.
Eg: Unfavorable weather conditions this morning caused a postponement of the launch of the space shuttle.

bitterly [adv]: bitterly cold = extremely and unpleasantly cold.
Eg: The winter in Canada last year was bitterly cold.

unbearably [n]: in a way that is too painful or unpleasant for you to continue to experience.
Eg: The sun was almost unbearably hot today.

period [n]: the length of time that something lasts.
Eg: He planned a stay of a two year period .

inept [adj]: having or showing no skill; clumsy.
Eg: Consecutive governments have insisted on a completely inept policy of open immigration.
variable [adj]: not consistent or having a fixed pattern; liable to change.

Eg: Even the music, which, whilst variable in quality, has some genuinely affecting moments, ultimately seems insubstantial.

34. Describe a time you couldn’t use the mobile phone



You should say:

- *When it was and where it was*
- *Why you could not use your mobile phone*
- *How you felt about it*

(When it was and where it was)
I'm going to describe a time when I didn't use the mobile phone. Well, I was not allowed to use it. During our math lessons in 12th grade in high school, the teacher decided to ban mobile phones, considering its **adverse** impacts on students' performance. At first, she wasn't **set in her ways** to impose such a strict rule. However, **on second thoughts**, she believed that banning mobile phones would benefit all the students.

(Why you could not use your mobile phone)
Our teacher was convinced that such a **gadget** would always generate **distractions** among students, discouraging their learning spirit. Indeed, this was the case for many. In my class, those who owned a mobile phone could hardly pay full attention as they were constantly checking their phones for messages and the like. As a result, our teachers found it **problematic** and disturbing when students were using phones in their class, and we ended up not being able to bring cellphones to school at all. If anyone needed to call their parents, they could use the telephone in the supervisor's room.

(How you felt about it)
Honestly, at that time, the price of mobile phones was **beyond my means**; therefore, only the rich could afford them. This rule exerted no effects on me or my studying. Still, many of my friends felt irritated because they had **grown accustomed to** performing **calculations** with a cell phone instead of a calculator.

Vocabulary from *Technology:*
gadget
Meaning: a technological tool like a mobile phone or camera

Example: Such a gadget would help you considerably in studying.

Other vocabulary:

adverse [adj]: preventing success or development; harmful; unfavorable.
Eg: Of course, there is also the adverse publicity that could dog them for years to come.

set in one's ways [expression]: to do the same things every day and to not want to change those habits.
Eg: As people get older, they often become set in their ways.

on second thoughts [expression]: used when you want to change a decision you have made:
Eg: Can I have a cup of coffee, please? - actually, on second thoughts, I'll have a beer.

in the interest of [expression]: to the advantage or advancement of
Eg: New students may be accommodated in halls of residence in the interest of the school.

distraction (n): something that prevents someone from giving their attention to something else:

Eg: You can turn the television off if you find it a distraction.

accordingly [adv]: in a way that suits the situation:
Eg: They accordingly stressed that the unqualified trust in reason could dangerously erode this relationship.

worrisome (adj): worrying.
Eg: Alcohol and tobacco consumption by young people is especially worrisome because habits formed early are likely to persist.

beyond one's means (expression): Too costly for one, more than one can afford.
Eg: A second vacation this year is well beyond our means.

(be)/ grow accustomed to [expression]: familiar with something.
Eg: She quickly became accustomed to his messy ways.

calculation (n): a mathematical determination of the size or number of something.
Eg: A calculation is a deliberate process that transforms one or more inputs into one or more results, with variable change.

PART 3: PHONES

1.Do you think it is necessary to have laws on the use of mobile phones?
(***Give a direct answer to the question***) Well, this issue is quite complicated. ***(Explain your reason or reasons***) From my perspective, cell phone usage should be restricted in public places. For example, it would be rude to answer your phone in a restaurant and talk to the other person because it would interrupt other peoples' dates or dinners or get-togethers. Or in places like the library, theatre, and especially in class while listening to a lecture, it can be very disruptive when someone next to you starts using his/her cell phone.

2.How do you like children having mobile phones?
(***Give a direct answer to the question***) I disapprove of this, as having a cellphone would affect their academic performances. (***Explain your reason or reasons***) Such a **gadget** would continuously generate great **distractions** among students during class and discourage their learning spirit. Indeed, this has been the case for many. (***Give an example***) When I was in secondary school, those who owned a mobile phone could hardly pay full attention as they were constantly checking their phones for messages and the like. As a result, our teachers found it **problematic** and disturbing when students were using phones in their class, and we ended up not being able to bring cellphones to school at all.

3.At what age should children have mobile phones?
(***Give a direct answer to the question***) Those above the age of 16 can probably have mobile phones (***Explain your reason or reasons***) Children below the age of sixteen should not be given mobile phones since their brain is too sensitive to **withstand** the effects of mobile radiation. Under the absorption of radiation, children can have **adverse** health issues. Adults are also affected by the radiation, but it will be more consequential in children because of the increased absorption of these radiation levels.

Vocabulary from *Technology:*
gadget
Meaning: a technological tool like a mobile phone or camera



Example: Such a gadget would help you considerably in studying.

Other vocabulary:

for the sake of [expression]: in order to help or bring advantage to someone.
Eg: If you do something for the sake of something, you do it for that purpose or in order to achieve that result.

distraction (n): something that prevents someone from giving their attention to something else:
Eg: You can turn the television off if you find it a distraction.

accordingly [adv]: in a way that suits the situation:
Eg: They accordingly stressed that the unqualified trust in reason could dangerously erode this relationship.

in the interest of [expression]: to the advantage or advancement of
Eg: New students may be accommodated in halls of residence in the interest of the school.

adverse [adj]: preventing success or development; harmful; unfavorable
Eg: Of course, there is also the adverse publicity that could dog them for years to come.

withstand [v]: remain undamaged or unaffected by; resist.
Eg: The structure had been designed to withstand winds of more than 100 mph

35. Describe an ideal house or apartment you would like to live in the future

You should say:

- What it is like
- Where it is
- When you want to live there
- And explain why it is ideal for you

(What it is like)
Now, I would like to share with you a bit about a house that I wish to live in. The walls will be painted in white, which will make my house look a lot brighter and reduce the **absorption** of heat. Also, the doors will be made of glass because there is nothing more elegant than glass. I follow the minimalism of the Japanese, and I am lazy, so there will be nothing much inside my house apart from a kitchen, creamy lights, and some necessities. Paintings or complicated furniture will not find a place in my house.

(Where it is)
I've dreamt of having a big **detached house** with **spacious rooms** in the resort city of Danang since it was **crowned** the most livable city in Vietnam. It has won this title for five years, **leaving far behind** its rivals such as Vung Tau, which is my hometown, and Ho Chi Minh city, which is the wealthiest city in Vietnam. Danang is such a stunning coastal city with magnificent views of the sea and the mountains. It's natural and modern at the same time, which is why I would love to live there.



(When you want to live there)
I would love to live in this house when I graduate from university and have a stable job. Only then, will I be able to leave Ho Chi Minh city for Da Nang because I have to finish my degree at a university in Ho Chi Minh city.

(And explain why it is ideal to you)
This house will be located in the city of Danang, which is a coastal city with beautiful beaches and mountains. The house will be built **in deference to** Japanese minimalism. Also, I'm a **couch potato** who does not want to spend time on tidying up the house too frequently.

Vocabulary from *accommodation*:

Detached house (n): a house that is not physically connected to another property
Example: Prices are rising so fast that people can't afford detached houses.

Spacious room (n): a large room
Example: a **spacious** house**/**living room

To be crowned (v):to invest with regal dignity and power.
Example: Queen Elizabeth II was **crowned** (queen) in 1953. (= made queen in a special ceremony)

To leave someone far behind (n): you go away permanently from them.
Example: Three years later, the company had left all its close rivals far **behind**.

Absorption (n): the process by which one thing absorbs or is absorbed by another.
Example: Some poisonous gases can enter the body by **absorption** through the skin.

In deference to something (phrase): out of respect for; in consideration of.
Example: She covered her head **in deference to** Muslim custom.

Couch potato (n): a person who takes little or no exercise and watches a lot of television.
Example: A couch potato is a person who watches a lot of television and does not have an active life

PART 3

1. Where do people in Vietnam like to live, in a house or an apartment?
People in Vietnam **prefer** private houses due to the overwhelming part of the population **dwelling** in private houses. However, an increasing number of citizens, especially in cities, choose to live in apartments as a result of the population explosion, which has triggered a substantial rise in the prices of private houses.

2. What are the benefits of living in a house?
The first benefit of living in a house is that one can **get a clearer sense of** privacy as they do not face as much neighbour-**driven** trouble as those living in apartments. Also, it is worth highlighting the extent to which citizens living in their own houses can save money usually spent on different areas such as security or public area cleaning services.

3. Why do many people like to live in the city?



The answer is more than simple - convenience. Not only can people enjoy more convenience in terms of shopping and services, but they can also have the chance to send their children to **elite** schools. Viewed from another perspective, those who prefer a **hectic** life tend to live in the city as it offers them enough **hustle and bustle**.

4. Where do people like to live: in the city centre or the suburbs?
Many people want to live in the city centre. This can be clearly seen in the case of Ho Chi Minh city. People tend to live close to District 1 and District 3 as a majority of companies and offices are based here. Most people live in District 2 and District 7.

Vocabulary:

To give preference to something (phrase): to treat someone or something better than someone or something else
Example: The city **gives preference to** job applicants who live there.

To dwell (v): live in or at a specified place.
Example: She **dwelt in** remote parts of Asia for many years.

To feel a/an + adj + sense of something (phrase): A feeling or display of relief that something particularly stressful, unpleasant, or undesirable has been avoided or completed.
Example: He **felt a deep sense of relief** after the phone call

cost-driven: Cost-driven business models focus on minimizing costs wherever possible.
Example: The company's policies are essentially **cost-driven**.

Elite: a select group that is superior in terms of ability or qualities
to the rest of a group or society.
Example: Ha Noi – Amsterdam and Le Hong Phong are two of the **elite** schools in Vietnam.

Hectic (adj): full of incessant or frantic activity.
Example: The area has become a haven for people tired of the **hectic** pace of city life.

Hustle and bustle (idiom): A large amount of activity and work, usually in a noisy surrounding.
Example: I love the **hustle and** bustle of the marketplace.

36. Describe a successful small company that you know

You should say

- What it is
- How you knew about it
- How it became successful
- And explain how you felt about it

(what it is)
The term **entrepreneur** has been **all the rage** recently as thousands of successful start-ups deliver motivational speeches to inspire entrepreneurship. Among different kinds of start-ups, Trinh homestay, located in the Mekong Delta, has emerged as one of the most successful ones in the prime age of tourism in Vietnam.

(how you knew about it)



AirBnB, an app which supports homestays has succeeded in running marketing campaigns and offering lots of deals for both customers and homeowners; it is regarded as an ideal alternative to traditional hotels, which will **cost customers an arm and a leg**. Facebook and Instagram have been flooded with thousands of posts about AirBnB services and some months ago, I **stumbled on** Trinh homestay.

(how it became successful)
An article on CNN **cast a spotlight on** Trinh homestay, helping her homestay gain independence from AirBnB. First, Trinh homestay was just like millions of other homestays on AirBnB; however, Trinh's creativity and ardour for the Vietnamese culture lifted her first homestay out of AirBnB as Trinh homestay expanded. Trinh has built many homestays in other provinces in the Mekong Delta.

(and explain how you felt about it)
I believe that Trinh homestay, albeit operated on a small scale, should be an **exemplifier** of the importance of creativity as well as well-equipped with the knowledge of the local culture. Also, her success can be attributed to the fact that she alone has built a small **niche business** that caters for culture enthusiasts and **ran her business** on her own during the first days of Trinh Homestay. Other homestays in Vietnam should follow this model, creating an atmosphere that represents the local region's culture right in the place where tourists stay.

Part 3

1. Which do you prefer, family firms or non-family ones?
I prefer non-family businesses because they tend to be more organised. Meanwhile, family firms are significantly less professional as employees in this kind of business are not trained in a standard way.

2. What are the important factors in making a company successful?
The critical factor which **springs to my mind** is the human resource. While it's undeniable that technology plays an integral role in delivering success to a company, it is the human resource that **has control over** technology and operates it.

3. What kinds of qualities should a successful business person have?
Common sense, of course. This is a quality which everyone should have, not only successful businessmen. Moreover, a successful business person should also be able to **formulate visionary policies** and strategies.

4. What emerging industries do you know?
To the best of my knowledge, some emerging industries are tourism and beauty.
Vietnam's tourism industry has been expanding at a **double-digit** rate, at least 10% for the past five years. Meanwhile, the beauty industry is also growing very fast as the consumption of cosmetics is growing 5% per year.

Vocabulary from *business*:

Entrepreneur (n): An entrepreneur is an individual who creates a new business, bearing most of the risks and enjoying most of the rewards.
Example: He's an **entrepreneur** who made his money in computer software.

To run business (phrase): to operate, to direct, to oversee, to manage (a business, a company)
Example: He runs a dry cleaning **business**.



37. Describe a place you remember well that full of colour

You should say

- Where it is
- What it is like
- What it is used for
- And explain why you remember it well.

(Where it is):

During my trip to Singapore last year, I had an opportunity to visit the Singapore Botanic Gardens, which was a place filled with different colours. The gardens are located quite far away from **tourist traps**, but very **accessible** by bus.

(What it is like):

Being the biggest botanic garden in Singapore, covering more than 74,000 square meters, it **showcases** Singapore's biggest collection of flowers comprising hundreds of species with a wide variety of colours, such as red, yellow, orange, pink, or even blue, and their shades. The national flower of Singapore, which is the orchid, can be found easily in this garden. Moreover, the park's entrance is also naturally decorated with colourful flowers.

(What it is used for):

The Botanic garden is an ideal spot not only for foreign visitors but also for Singapore citizens to **immerse themselves in** natural beauty and **get away from it all** after hardworking days. You can easily see **hordes of tourists going sightseeing** or leisure activities conducted at this place, especially on the weekends.

And explain why you remember it well

Well, I think the primary reason why the memories about this place are still **vivid** in my mind is that it was the first time I have ever witnessed such a wide variety of colourful flowers in my life. The moment I entered the garden, I was utterly **blown away** by its beauty. It was a **once in a lifetime** experience. I hope that I will have opportunities to revisit this garden.

Part 3 questions:

1. **Is colour important for clothing?**

Yes, I do think that colours play a vital role in clothes since it decides how we appear to other people. Sometimes the colours of your outfits even express your feelings. For example, when I'm not in a good mood, I will choose a black outfit.

2. **Should the course books be colourful?**

Absolutely. I believe that course books should be **lively** to help in the effective transmission of knowledge to readers. Using illustrations aids in learning and may be more effective than just describing something. For example, kids are usually in favour of books with colourful pictures rather than those with only words. If coursebooks include colourful contents, they are more likely to sell faster than other ones.

VOCABULARY FROM HOLIDAY:

Tourist trap
Meaning: somewhere where too many tourists go
Example: There are a lot of people visiting Hoi An Ancient Town these days, which makes this town become a **tourist trap**.

Accessible



Meaning: possible to approach, enter, or use
Example: The island is **accessible** only by ferry.

To get away from it all
Meaning: to take a holiday to escape a busy or stressful lifestyle
Example: Why don't you **get away from it all** and have a weekend in the mountains?

Hordes of tourist
Meaning: crowds of tourists
Example: During summer, we can see **hordes of tourists** in these islands.

To go sightseeing
Meaning: to look around the tourist sites
Example: Last year we went to London, and we spent most of the trip **going sightseeing**, there was so much to see!

OTHER VOCABULARY:

To showcase
Meaning: to show the best qualities or parts of something
Example: The main aim of the exhibition is to **showcase** British design.

Immerse oneself in something
Meaning: to become completely involved in something
Example: She got some books out of the library and **immersed herself in** Jewish history and culture.

Vivid
Meaning: brightly colored or (of descriptions or memories) producing clear, powerful, and detailed images in the mind
Example: He gave a very **vivid** and often shocking account/description of his time in prison.

To be blown away
Meaning: To be surprised so much
Example: Winning first prize and a full scholarship **blew her away**.

Once-in-a-lifetime
Meaning: An once-in-a-lifetime experience or opportunity is very special because you will probably only have it once
Example: A tour of Australia is a **once-in-a-lifetime experience.**

Dull
Meaning: not interesting or exciting in any way
Example: I find his art rather **dull** and conventional.

Lively
Meaning: full of energy and enthusiasm; interesting and exciting
Example: There was some **lively** discussion at the meeting.

38. Describe a time you do not tell your friend the truth

You should say
- What happened
- Why you did not tell the truth
- Who you did not tell the truth to
- And explain how you feel about it

(What happened):
Well, I have to say that I am not used to telling lies. I'm not perfect, and indeed, no one is. During my high school days, **sitting exams** was **nerve-wracking**, which **drove me crazy**. However, there was a time I **fell behind with my studies** and got a D in Chemistry test. Therefore, I **was left with no choice** but to **make up** a story

(Why you did not tell the truth):
I had always been a little boy to my parents, especially to my mom, who **spoilt** me a lot. To **live up to my parent's expectations**, I had to study under a lot of pressure to make them proud. I still remember sitting the chemistry exam, and I felt that I was going to fail the test. The moment I received the test result from my teacher, I was anxious. Therefore, I had to lie to my parents so that I could avoid getting **punished** and **letting my parents down**.

(Who you did not tell the truth to):
It was my parents to whom I lied. Having known the result, I came home with a nervous look on my face. I informed my parents about my test results immediately. Surprisingly, they believed me without any **suspicion**. However, my school texted the result to my mother, and they got to know that I had fooled them. I got **detention** for one week, and I wasn't allowed to use my mobile phone.

And explain how you feel about it
My parents were **pissed off** about the lie. Seeing how they reacted to my test result, I wished that I had not lied.

Part 3 questions:
1. Do people in your country judge people when they lie?
Yes, I do think that people will be judged when they lie to someone. Vietnamese people usually say **"Fool me once, shame on you. Fool me twice, shame on me"**, and I believe it is true. For example, if a company fails to make their promises to their counterparts, they are less likely to be chosen for the forthcoming projects.

2. How should we tell if it's a white lie or not?
Well, there are some ways to find out if a person is telling a white lie. We can focus on their facial expressions. For example, if a person is telling a white lie, their eyes will dart **back and forth**, which indicates that they are feeling uncomfortable.

3. Is it acceptable to tell white lies?
I think there are times when it is suitable to tell white lies to other people. It is the time when they are asking about something that they like, like their haircut or maybe their makeup. When they think that they are glowing with a new skincare product or are proud of their achievements, we may not be necessarily impressed by it. But we can tell a white lie in those situations.

4. When do people often lie?

There are various reasons why people often lie. However, I think the key reason why they may lie regularly is that they don't want to disappoint other people. For example, I lied to my friend about her haircut, which was not great because I was worried that the truth might worsen our relationship.

5. Why do some people keep telling lies?
Maybe because some people consider telling lies an **inconsequential** issue; therefore, it gradually becomes a habit, and they cannot give up on it. For example, my friend had to lie to her parents about her test results, and day by day, she **was accustomed to** lying to other people.

VOCABULARY FROM EDUCATION

Sitting exams
Meaning: To take an exam
Example: If my teacher hadn't convinced me to **sit for** the SAT, I never would have gotten into college.

Fall behind with your studies
Meaning: to progress less quickly than others
Example: He was ill for six weeks and **fell behind with his schoolwork.**

OTHER VOCABULARY

Nerve-wracking
Meaning: difficult to do and causes a lot of worry for the person involved in it
Example: My wedding was the most **nerve-wracking** thing I've ever experienced.

Left someone with no choice
Meaning: to make someone feel that they must do something
Example: I was **left with no choice** but to report him.

To make up something
Meaning: To invent an excuse, a story, etc., often in order to deceive
Example: I was trying to **make up** a good excuse for being late.

Spoil
Meaning: To treat someone very or too well, especially by being extremely generous
Example: When I'm feeling miserable I go shopping and **spoil** myself - a couple of new dresses always make me feel better.

Live up to something
Meaning: To be as good as something
Example: The concert was brilliant - it **lived up to all our expectations**.

Punish
Meaning: to cause someone who has done something wrong or committed a crime to suffer, by hurting them, forcing them to pay money, sending them to prison, etc.
Example: He **punished** the class by giving them extra work.

Let someone down
Meaning: Fail to support or help someone as they had hoped or expected.
Example: I promised Sophie I would meet her and I can't **let her down**.

Suspicion
Meaning: doubt or lack of trust
Example: Since they discovered the truth about his background, his colleagues have regarded him with **suspicion**.

Detention
Meaning: a form of punishment in which children are made to stay at school for a short time after classes have ended
Example: She's had four **detentions** this term.

To be pissed off about something
Meaning: annoyed
Example: She seemed a bit **pissed off** that she hadn't been invited.

"**Fool me once, shame on you. Fool me twice, shame on me"**
Meaning: After being tricked once, one should learn from one's mistakes and avoid being tricked in the same way again.

Back and forth
Meaning: Moving first in one direction and then in the opposite one
Example: She swayed gently **back and forth** to the music.

Inconsequential
Meaning: Not important
Example: Most of what she said was pretty **inconsequential.**

To be accustomed to
Meaning: Familiar with something
Example: I'm not **accustomed to** being treated like this

39. Describe a leisure activity you do with your family

You should say

- What it is
- When you do it
- Where you do it

And explain how you feel about it ***(What it is):***
My family **fancies** at cooking, and we always prefer **home cooked food**. We **feast** on weekends. However, I would like to talk about the time when my family gathered to make Chung cake for the Tet holiday.

(When you do it)
The Lunar New Year, or Tet, is a traditional holiday in my country. It was probably my most favourite holiday when I was a small boy as my family did a lot of activities to celebrate this occasion. Among them, making Chung cake made me excited the most. Traditionally, we always make Chung Cake 2 days **before** Lunar New Year.

(Where you do it)



We had a big **yard** behind our house, and it was where Chung Cake was made, from preparing ingredients, to shaping the cake. I still remember helping my parents prepare the ingredients for the cake while my older brother was in charge of shaping the cake. And then, my father lit a small fire to boil the cake overnight. It was perhaps the only time of the year when I was allowed to **stay up** late.

(And explain how you feel about it)
In recent years, my family has not had enough time to make Chung cake. However, to me, a **ready-made** Chung cake bought from a local market cannot bring the warmth and taste of a Chung cake made from home. I hope that my family can continue the tradition in the coming years.

Part 3 questions:

1. **Do men and women enjoy the same leisure activities?**

I don't think so. I believe that men and women are born with **distinct** characteristics and personalities; therefore, their choices of leisure activities might also differ from each other. For example, while men tend to be involved in sporty activities, women prefer shopping or eating out with their friends to playing sports.

2. What types of leisure activities are popular in your country?
Well, there is undoubtedly a wide variety of hobbies in my country. I think the most popular would be travelling. For example, **a getaway** from the **hustle and bustle** of city life to coastal cities on weekends can help people **relieve** stress.

3. **Why is it important for people to have time for leisure activities?**

Spending time on leisure activities plays a vital role in shaping people's state of health. It helps us recharge our energy after a **nerve-wracking** day, and avoids getting **overloaded**. For example, reading books when you have free time enables you to **let off some steam** after working under a lot of pressure.

4. **Why are some activities more popular than others?**

It is quite natural that people would prefer some sorts of leisure activities than others. I believe that the history and **socio-cultural** background of a nation influences the type of leisure activities people do. For example, teenagers in some Asian countries often make kites and fly them while this is not the case in many western countries.

5. Are there types of leisure activities that are as popular today as those that were popular when your parents were young?
No, as time has gone by, the popularities of leisure activities have also changed. For example, when our parents were young, activities like watching TV/movies, visiting some famous cafés/restaurants and visiting families/relatives were more popular. But, today, activities like visiting a gym nearby, shopping, and playing video games have grown equally famous because of technological advancements and increasing awareness of health and fashion.

VOCABULARY FROM FOOD

Home-cooked food
Meaning: Food cooked at home from individual ingredients
Example: The menu offers a range of **home-cooked** meals, from hearty soups to stacked sandwiches to sizzling steaks.
OTHER VOCABULARY
Fancy
Meaning: Like



Example: I didn't **fancy** swimming in that water.

Feast
Meaning: A special meal with very good food or a large meal for many people
Example: We had a **feast** of fresh seafood.

Stay up
Meaning: To go to bed later than usual
Example: We **stayed up (late)** to watch a film.

Ready-made
Meaning: Bought or found in a finished form and available to use immediately
Example: I didn't sew the curtains – they came **ready-made**.

Distinct
Meaning: Clearly separate and different (from something else)
Example: The two concepts are quite **distinct** (from each other).

A getaway
Meaning: A vacation
Example: Let's make **a getaway** to an island.

Hustle and bustle
Meaning: Busy and frenetic activity or excitement.
Example: I love living among the **hustle and bustle** of the city.

Relieve
Meaning: To improve an unpleasant situation
Example: New toll roads could help **relieve** congestion on other routes.

Nerve-wracking
Meaning: difficult to do and causes a lot of worry for the person involved in it
Example: My wedding was the most **nerve-wracking** thing I've ever experienced.

Overloaded
Meaning: To give someone more work or problems than they can deal with
Example: Try not to **overload** yourself with work.

Let off steam
Meaning: To do or say something that helps you to get rid of strong feelings or energy
Example: She jogs after work to **let off steam**.

Socio-cultural
Meaning: Related to the different groups of people in society and their habits, traditions, and beliefs
Example: A good doctor has the ability to relate to the **sociocultural** background of his or her patients.



40. Describe a time you were sleepy but had to stay awake

You should say

- When it was
- Why you had to stay awake
- How you kept yourself awake
- And explain how you felt about it

(When):

I consider myself a **night owl**; therefore, having a **white night** is not difficult for me. Today, I would like to talk about a night I had to stay awake, to bake the Chung Cake for Lunar New Year.

(Why you had to stay awake):

You probably know that Tet or Lunar New Year is one of the biggest festivals in Vietnam. There are a lot of activities taking place before the Lunar New Year, and baking Chung Cake is one of them, which excites me the most. However, the process of making Chung cake is **time-consuming** and requires the contribution of several people. It takes up to 12 hours for the cake to be baked. Therefore, my cousins and I had to spend the whole night preparing the cake.

(How you kept yourself awake):

To stop **falling asleep** while waiting for the Chung Cake to be baked, I drank a cup of Vietnamese black-iced coffee, which kept me awake, the whole night. Moreover, my cousins also spent a white night with me, and we kept talking until dawn.

And explain how you felt about it

After the cake had been baked, I became **worn out** and wanted to hit the bed as quick as possible. I had to say that I **slept like a rock** after having a white night. However, it was a memorable experience for me. I fondly recall the traditional activities of Tet and the time spent with family members.

Part 3 questions:

1. What are some advantages to getting enough sleep?

Sleep plays a vital role in shaping people's health. It helps us recharge our energy after a **nerve-wracking** day, avoids being **overloaded**. For example, an 8-hour sleep is believed to help people work efficiently and boost their productivity. If people don't get enough sleep, they can find it difficult to concentrate on their tasks.

2. **How do people in your country keep track of their sleep?**

I believe that in this day and age, people in my country can take advantage of cutting-edge devices to be aware of their sleep. Such applications have been invented to **analyze** their sleep patterns and even give them some recommendations such as listening to the ocean waves or raindrops, which will help them sleep better. If it were not for those applications, they might not know what problems they are facing.

3. **How do you avoid falling asleep when you are at a meeting?**

I think that the critical factor which keeps people awake in a meeting is that they should go to bed earlier than usual, else the tiredness caused due to the insufficient sleep will **drain their energy** the next day. Moreover, caffeine may also be another option to help people avoid **nodding off** in the



meeting. For example, I usually drink a cup of coffee before going to work, which keeps me charged all day.

OTHER VOCABULARY

A night owl
Meaning: A person who prefers to be awake and active at night
Example: My wife's **a night owl**, but I like to be in bed by 10 o'clock.

A white night
Meaning: A sleepless night.
Example: I had **a white night** because of stomach ache

Time-consuming
Meaning: Takes a lot of time to do
Example: Producing a dictionary is a very **time-consuming** job.

To fall asleep
Meaning: To begin sleeping
Example: I'd better get out before I fall asleep.

Worn out
Meaning: Extremely tired
Example: They were **worn out** after their long walk.

Sleep like a rock
Meaning: To experience a very deep and restful sleep; to sleep soundly.
Example: I have to set numerous alarms for the morning because I **sleep like a rock** every night!

Nerve-wracking
Meaning: difficult to do and causes a lot of worry for the person involved in it
Example: My wedding was the most **nerve-racking** thing I've ever experienced.

Overload
Meaning: To give someone more work or problems than they can deal with
Example: Try not to **overload** yourself with work.

Analyze
Meaning: To examine carefully and in detail so as to identify causes, key factors, possible results
Example: In the article, several experienced diplomats **analyzed** the president's foreign policy.

Drain (someone or something) of (something)
Meaning: To cause someone or something to lose some ability or quality, often energy.
Example: Eleanor has such a pessimistic attitude that being around her just **drains me of energy.**

Nod off
Meaning: To begin sleeping, especially not intentionally
Example: After our busy day, we both sat and **nodded off** in front of the TV.



41. Describe clothes you wear on special occasions

You should say:

- *What they are*
- *Where you buy them*
- *Why you wear them*
- *And what people think about them*

(What they are)
Most of the time, I prefer to dress in clothes that I feel **at ease**. For special occasions, therefore, I like to wear smart but casual trousers, white blouses and sometimes a jacket. When the social event I attend requires a higher level of formality, suits, and formal shoes would be my choice.

(Where you buy them)
Well, most of my casual clothes come from common fashion **brands**, like Zara or H&M, because they are relatively **affordable**. However, I do **set higher standards for** my formal clothes, especially in terms of the materials. Therefore, I occasionally buy some quality white blouses from a first-class fashion **brand**. I have sometimes ordered clothes online for special occasions, but I prefer to try them on. I have to admit that I also like the wide range of choice in the shops.

(Why you wear them)
I prefer the combination of a blouse and formal trousers for many reasons. Despite being a girl, I find wearing dresses or skirts uncomfortable. Besides, a white blouse is **suitable** for people of any age or gender and almost all occasions. Usually, formal clothes would make you look more mature, but a combination of a white blouse with trousers will give you a smart and **youthful** look.

(And what people think about them)
My family members like to see me wearing formal clothes. For others, I think this look conveys politeness and respect. My friends prefer me in elegant, feminine dresses, as a girl in a white blouse may not impress others. But, I prefer to **dismiss these traditional ideas**. For special occasions, I like to go by my choice, rather than wear the clothes that others would choose if they were me.

Vocabulary:

Traditional vs Modern:

to dismiss traditional ideas
Meaning: to decide that traditional ideas are not important and not worth considering anymore.
Example: We should not **dismiss traditional ideas** without considering them carefully.

Vocabulary:

at ease [expression]: relaxed and comfortable



Eg: From the moment that I entered the friendly atmosphere of the classroom, I felt completely **at ease.**
brand [noun]: the name of a product produced or sold by a particular company.
Eg: It was to become the leading **brand** of specialty coffee in North America.

affordable [adjective]: not expensive.
Eg: The shop in town always sells nice clothes at **affordable** prices.

set (high/low) standards for something [expression]: set a level of quality that people expect and generally accept as normal.
Eg: Banks in Hong Kong and China **are setting higher standards for** customer service in call centres.

suitable [adjective]: appropriate and fitting the occasion
Eg: This hotel has a large play area, so it is **suitable** for families with young children.

youthful [adjective]: having the qualities that are typical of young people.
Eg: At the time I admired his **youthful** enthusiasm.

childlike [adjective]: showing the good qualities that children have, such as trusting people, being honest and enthusiastic.
Eg: She has a somewhat **childlike** innocence surrounding her.

PART 3:

1.What factors do you think affect the clothes we choose to wear?

> (***Give a direct answer to the question***) Well, I think our choices of clothes are decided mainly by circumstances and personal **preferences**. (***Explain your reason or reasons***) On the one hand, your dress code will either be formal or casual, depending on the event you attend. **A person's sense of fashion** also plays a considerable role in the choices of outfits. (***Give an example*** - ***often a personal example***) For instance, on occasions that require formality, I prefer white shirts and trousers to elegant dresses, as it suits me the most.

2.Is it possible to look good without spending lots of money on clothes?

(***Give a direct answer to the question***) Yes, possibly (***Explain your reason or reasons***)
It is not **extravagance** but rather a person's taste of fashion and other factors that make himself or herself truly attractive. (***Give an example - often a personal example***)) From my own experience, I have a lot of peers who know how **to mix and match** different items of clothing that go well together. Surprisingly, many of their clothes are secondhand or **bargains** from cheap markets. (***Explain the opposite or alternative***) However, quality clothes do help improve one's overall appearance, so they are certainly worth the money.

3.Does the fashion shows have an impact on what we are wearing?



(***Give a direct answer to the question***) Yes, to people who are dedicated followers of fashion. (***Explain your reason or reasons***) Fashion shows never fail to introduce and **promote** the latest fashion trends, which people can follow to look more trendy. (***Give an example - often a personal example***)) For myself, although I enjoy watching the latest fashion shows with fabulous models, clothes from these shows do not suit my everyday style, and of course, they are **more often than not** too costly.

4.Do you think fashion trends are changing constantly?

(***Give a direct answer to the question***) Yes, undoubtedly. (***Explain your reason or reasons***) Fashion is an **ever-changing** industry because of external factors, including seasonal change and the influence of **trendsetters**, such as fashion designers and celebrities. Practically, a trend, by definition, doesn't last. (***Give an example - often a personal example***)) If you follow this industry closely, you will understand it's not only changing, sometimes old fashion trends also make a comeback, e.g. crop top, boot-cut jeans, white eyeliner. (***Explain the opposite or alternative***) However, some kinds of clothes are always favoured, such as jeans or T-shirts. These classics are those that rarely change and look good no matter what other "trends" are going on.

5.**Do you think people behave differently in different kinds of clothes?**

(***Give a direct answer to the question***) Certainly. I once read a quote by Caitlin Moran that helps express this perfectly, which is: "When a woman says 'I have nothing to wear!' What she really means is, 'there's nothing here for who I'm supposed to be today.' " (***Explain your reason or reasons***) We use clothes in connection to the roles we're going to play. (***Give an example - often a personal example***)) For instance, someone who dressed **immaculately** in a party is more likely to attract interest and attention, which **in return** would make that person feel more confident.

6.Are people's ideas about fashion today the same as people's ideas at previous times?

(***Give a direct answer to the question***) Probably no. (***Explain your reason or reasons***) Fashion is regarded more highly these days than it once was. (***Give an example - often a personal example***)). When interacting with your mom or granny, you will find that their concept of fashion will undoubtedly contrast with each other and that of your own, which shows that ideas about fashion vary from generation to generation.

Vocabulary:

preference [noun]: the fact that you like something or someone more than another thing or person.
Eg: Her **preference** is for comfortable rather than stylish clothes.

extravagant [**adjective**]: extreme and unreasonable.
Eg: The product does not live up to the **extravagant** claims of the advertisers.

to mix and match [expression]: to combine in a harmonious or interesting way, as articles of clothing in an ensemble.
Eg: Gary likes **to mix and match** clothes for different events.



bargain [noun]: something on sale at a lower price than its true value.
Eg: This coat was half-price - a real **bargain**.

to promote [verb]: to encourage people to like, buy, use, do, or support something.
Eg: Advertising companies are always having to think up new ways **to promote** products.

more often than not [expression]: most of the time.
Eg: More often than not, a student will come up with the right answer.

ever-changing [adjective]: constantly changing or developing.
Eg: The key to success is adapting to the **ever-changing** conditions.

trendsetter [noun]: a person, organization, etc. that starts new fashions, especially in clothes.
Eg: They are not only the biggest fast food chain, but also the industry's **trendsetter**.

immaculately [adverb]: extremely neatly and tidily; perfectly:
Eg: The new manager arrived, dressed **immaculately** in a smart, new suit.

in return [expression]: in exchange.
Eg: Some tenants get rent reductions **in return** for help managing the building.

